TABLE OF CONTENTS

VOLUME II

APPENDIX K  Design Considerations for Links between Shuttler Orbiter and Space Station
APPENDIX L  Shuttle Ku-Band Radar Interference to Space Station Links
APPENDIX M  Preliminary Considerations for Antenna Switching, Power Control, and AGC Functions for Space Station Multiple Access System
APPENDIX N  Power Control for Space Station Multiple Access System
APPENDIX O  Design Considerations for a Universal Multi-Channel Modem for Space Station Ku-Band Links
APPENDIX P  Coding for the Space Station Information System
APPENDIX Q  SSIS Header Code
APPENDIX R  SSIS SM Codes
APPENDIX S  A Critique of the Schilling-Manela Codes
APPENDIX T  Wanderer Tracker Performance Goals
APPENDIX U  Simulation Models for Optical Communication Systems Analysis
APPENDIX K

DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS FOR LINKS BETWEEN SHUTTLE ORBITER AND SPACE STATION
DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS FOR LINKS BETWEEN SHUTTLE ORBITER AND SPACE STATION

Contract No. NAS9-17414
Interim Report

Prepared for
NASA Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center
Houston, TX 77058

Prepared by
Sergei Udalov

Axiomatix
9841 Airport Boulevard
Suite 912
Los Angeles, CA 90045

Axiomatix Report No. R8607-3
July 22, 1986
Table of Contents

List of Figures ......................................................................................................................................... i
List of Tables .............................................................................................................................................. ii
1.0 Introduction and Summary ................................................................................................................... 1
2.0 Requirements ......................................................................................................................................... 4
3.0 Implementation Possibility and Trade-offs ......................................................................................... 6
  3.1 Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station Link ...................................................................................................... 6
    3.1.1 Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station Link at S-Band ............................................................................ 6
      3.1.1.1 Possible Implementation at S-Band ....................................................................................... 6
      3.1.1.2 Link Budget for SO/SS at S-Band ......................................................................................... 11
    3.1.2 Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station Link at Ku-Band .......................................................................... 14
      3.1.2.1 Implementation Consideration ............................................................................................. 14
      3.1.2.2 Link Budget for SO/SS Link at Ku-Band ............................................................................ 16
    3.1.3 Hybrid S-Band/Ku-Band Implementation ..................................................................................... 16
4.0 Discussion of Trade-offs ..................................................................................................................... 21
5.0 References ............................................................................................................................................ 24
### List of Figures

| Figure 3-1 | Orbiter/Space Station Link at S-Band | Page  
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-2</td>
<td>Functional Diagram for Orbiter Equipment for Implementing Orbiter/Space Station Link at S-Band</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-3</td>
<td>Modification of CIE to Multiplex Command Voice on Forward Link</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-4</td>
<td>Orbiter/Space Station Link at Ku-Band</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3-5</td>
<td>Orbiter/Space Station Links at S-Band and Ku-Band</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## List of Tables

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
</table>
| Table 1-1 | Link Margin Summary for Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station  
S-Band and Ku-Band Link at 37 km             | 2    |
| Table 2-1 | Requirement for Orbiter/Space Station RF Links  
(Reference 1)                      | 5    |
| Table 3-1 | S-Band Link, Shuttle Orbiter to Space Station                                | 12   |
| Table 3-2 | S-Band Link, Space Station to Shuttle Orbiter                               | 13   |
| Table 3-3 | Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station Link at Ku-Band for  
Command and Voice                 | 17   |
| Table 3-4 | Space Station/Shuttle Orbiter Link at Ku-Band for  
Telemetry and Voice               | 18   |
1.0 INTRODUCTION AND SUMMARY

This report considers possible implementations of the RF links for command, telemetry, and voice communication between the Shuttle Orbiter (SO) and the Space Station (SS). For these links, there are three implementable and realistic candidates. These are:

1) All S-band link
2) All Ku-band link
and
3) Hybrid S-band/Ku-band Link

Another possibility would involve the use of UHF for voice communication, but this approach was not considered here because of potential frequency utilization problem.

Table 1-1 shows link margin summary for Shuttle/Orbiter RF link implementations at either S-band or Ku-band.* The table indicates that the Ku-band implementation has significantly higher margins than the S-band implementation. This is due primarily to the use of high gain (24 dB) antennas on the Space Station end of the link.

The advantage of larger antenna appertures provided by S-band is offset by the fact that only 0 dB antenna gain is assumed at the Space Station end for the S-band operation. This assumption is very conservative and it results rather low margins for the S-band link which carries the telemetry and voice from the Space Station to the Orbiter. If the Space Station antenna gain at S-band is increased to 3 dB, then the margins improve accordingly. At this point, we do not see any reasons why such antenna gain increase could not be acceptable if the decision is made to operate at S-band.

The unique feature of the S-band implementation considered in this report is technique for transmitting two-way 16 kbps delta-modulation voice between the Shuttle and the Space Station at the maximum range of 37 km. This approach, as proposed by Axiomatix, uses the existing standard subcarriers for communicating digital voice. For the

*Hybrid use of S- and Ku-bands would involve same link margins, therefore, no listing is given for a "hybrid" approach.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Link</th>
<th>Band</th>
<th>Signal Transmitted</th>
<th>Origin</th>
<th>Destination</th>
<th>Rate</th>
<th>EIRP (dBm)</th>
<th>Link Margin (dB)</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Shuttle Orbiter (SO) to Space Station (SS)</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>CMD</td>
<td>SO</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>2 kbps</td>
<td>30.7</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>PI Link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VOICE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16 kbps</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ku</td>
<td>CMD</td>
<td>SO</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>2 kbps</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>Ku-band MA Link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VOICE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16 kbps</td>
<td>16.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Space Station (SS) to Shuttle Orbiter (SO)</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>TLM</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>SO</td>
<td>16 kbps</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>PI/Transponder link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VOICE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16 kbps</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>PI/Transponder link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>Ku</td>
<td>TLM</td>
<td>SS</td>
<td>SO</td>
<td>16 kbps</td>
<td>52.4</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>Ku-band MA Link</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>VOICE</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16 kbps</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 1-1. Link Margin Summary for Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station
S-Band and Ku-Band Link at 37 Km
Shuttle/Space Station link, the subcarriers in the range from 65 KHz to 95 KHz are considered as possible candidates. These subcarriers are typical of CIE and/or CIU equipment and are readily handled by the payload interrogator (PI). For the Space Station/Shuttle link, the standard 1.7 MHz subcarrier can be used for digital (16 kbps) voice. Consequently, by modulating the appropriate subcarriers at both ends of the S-band link a viable method for a two-way voice communication can be provided.

From the S-band and Ku-band link budgets considered, it appears that either implementation alone or the combination of the two can meet the requirements for the Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station link. Furthermore, as described in this report, there appears to be a possibility of adapting some of the existing S-band payload link equipment for providing two-way voice capability to the link. This capability will permit the Orbiter to satisfy the voice link requirements without actually using the Ku-band MA system.

From the standpoint of the Orbiter, this appears to be a relatively low cost solution, requiring only minor baseband modifications to CIE or similar equipment and the corresponding transponder. Neither RF nor any antenna modifications will be required. However, remaining at S-band beyond the IOC capability will impose dual-band (S- and Ku-bands) operation requirement on the Space Station. The impact of the latter requirement remains to be addressed.

The reference made above to the CIE is not the actual CIE which is a part of DOD's SGLS network. What is meant here is simply an equipment which is "CIE-like" in design, i.e., it has more than one subcarrier on the link to the payload. In fact, it could possible be a modified PSP. Whatever equipment it may be, the main requirement is that the 16 kbps digital voice can be "patched in" into it at the Orbiter and also be recovered and separated from telemetry for on-board use. Commands, however, could originate either on the ground or on-board.
2.0 REQUIREMENTS

Table 2-1 shows the requirements for the Orbiter/Space Station links as defined in Reference [1]. The requirements listed in this table can be interpreted to mean that (1) the commands and telemetry link can be satisfied by the present S-band Orbiter capability and (2) the two-way voice capability will be added when the Shuttle Orbiter EVA communication system is upgraded to be compatible with Space Station's multiple-access (MA) system. The table can be also interpreted that the S-band and Ku-band communication links can be used simultaneously to satisfy both the commands/telemetry and the voice link requirements.

As explained in the subsequent sections of this report, however, there is a possibility to implement the addition of voice capability at S-band with minor modifications of the existing Orbiter's S-band equipment. Specifically, Axiomatix has come up with techniques for such an S-band implementation which will provide simultaneous transmission of commands and voice on the Orbiter/Space Station link and telemetry and voice on the Space Station/Orbiter link.

The advantage of this approach is that it provides the voice capability for the Orbiter/Space Station link during the early stages of Space Station operations. In principle, this S-band capability could be retained indefinitely without ultimately converting to Ku-band MA operation. But, the continuing utilization of S-band will necessitate additional equipment and antennas on the Space Station. Thus, the current thinking among Phase B contractors is to satisfy most of the space-to-space link requirements with the Ku-band MA system including the Orbiter/Space Station link. If such an approach is adopted, then the Orbiter/Space Station and the Space Station/Orbiter link can be implemented with the Ku-band MA link. This will eliminate the requirements for separate commands and telemetry link at S-band.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Band</th>
<th>Capability</th>
<th>Data Rate (Max)</th>
<th>Number of Simult. Vehicles</th>
<th>Max Range Km (nm)</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Xmt*</td>
<td>Rcv*</td>
<td>Xmt*</td>
<td>Rcv*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>S</td>
<td>S</td>
<td>TLM</td>
<td>CMD</td>
<td>16 kbps</td>
<td>2 kbps</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ku</td>
<td>Ku</td>
<td>VOICE</td>
<td>VOICE</td>
<td>16 kbps</td>
<td>16 kbps</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Referenced to Space Station

Note 1: Orbiter compatible Link
Note 2: Upgraded Orbiter EVA Link

Table 2-1. Requirement for Orbiter/Space Station RF Links (Reference 1)
3.0 IMPLEMENTATION POSSIBILITY AND TRADE-OFFS

3.1 Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station Link

For this link there are following three (3) possible realizations:

1. All S-band link
2. All K-band link
3. Hybrid S-band/K-band link.

The pros and cons of each of these implementations are discussed below.

3.1.1 Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station Link at S-Band

3.1.1.1 Possible Implementation at S-Band

Figure 3-1 shows functionally an all S-band implementation of Shuttle/Space Station link. The important feature of the implementation shown is that the CIE (Communication Interface Equipment) may be used as an interface between the baseband signals and the PI at the Orbiter end of the link. The CIE equipment was developed by Rockwell for use with DOD payloads, but it has certain features which make it suitable, with some modifications, for this link.*

Specifically, the existence of more than one subcarrier on the forward and return links provide for transmission of both commands and voice on the forward link and reception of telemetry and voice on the return link.

The return link implementation is based on the availability of two simultaneous subcarries, i.e., 1,024 MHz and 1.7 MHz which can be phase-shift-keyed (PSK) at the Space Station transponder (Xponder) with telemetry (16 kbps) and digital voice (16 kbps), respectively.

The payload interrogation (PI) can demodulate these subcarries and the data streams can subsequently be recovered by CIE. Figure 3-2 shows the functional diagram

*Here we do not imply the actual CIE equipment as part of SGLS network. What we mean here is simply an equipment which is based on CIE design with modification.
Figure 3.1 Orbiter/Space Station Link at S-Band

SPACE STATION

Modified Xponder

ORBITER

Modified CIEPI Equipment

CMD

S-Band Link

2 kbps 16 kbps 16 kbps 16 kbps

Figure 3.1 Orbiter/Space Station Link at S-Band
Figure 3-2. Functional Diagram for Orbiter Equipment for Implementing Orbiter/Space Station Link at S-Band

*Requires modification
of this implementation. It is important to note that the return link does not require considerable CIE modification because the CIE already has the features which permit such operation.

The forward link, however, requires modification of the frequency-shift keying (FSK) scheme used for DOD payloads. Specifically, three tones, i.e., 65 KHz, 76 KHz and 95 KHz are used to transmit symbol rates up to 2000 symbols/second. The low symbol rate of the current system is not a limitation of PI modulation capability. This is because the PI modulator on the forward link responds primarily to the tone frequency and only in a second order fashion to the tone's fine modulation structure. Consequently, several methods for transmitting both 2 kbps command and 16 kbps voice are available. Figure 3-3 shows the modification for the CIE which will provide this simultaneous capability. Part (a) of Figure 3-3 shows the frequency division multiplexing implementation (FDM) of command (CMD) and voice data for input to the payload interrogator (PI). As shown in the figure, the two tones, i.e., 65 KHz and 95 KHz, have been replaced by two subcarriers at 64 KHz and 96 KHz, respectively. These subcarriers are bi-phase modulated with the respective binary data streams 2 kbps (CMD) and 16 kbps (VOICE).

The reason for changing each of the S/C frequencies by 1 KHz (95 KHz to 96 KHz and 65 KHz to 94 KHz) is to place the CMD subcarrier in the null of modulation spectra of the 94 KHz subcarrier. To further prevent the frequency interaction between the two S/C modulation streams bandpass/ filters (BPF) may be required for each modulated subcarrier prior to summing. The detailed requirements for these filters have to be determined in the future if this approach is adopted.

Another method of implementing combined transmission of commands and voice is shown in part (b) of Figure 3-3. In this approach straightforward time-division multiplexing can be used. The maximum combined data rate will be 18 kbps, plus some overhead to accommodate frame synchronization. This combined data stream is then bi-phase modulated on a 96 KHz subcarrier and delivered to PI.
(a) Frequency Division Multiplexing Implementation of CMD and VOICE Data for Forward Link

(b) Time Division MUX of CMD and VOICE on a Bi-Phase Modulated S/C

(c) Time Division MUX of CMD and VOICE on an FSK S/C

Figure 3-3. Modification of CIE to Multiplex Command Voice on Forward Link
The advantage of the TDM is that it conserves baseband spectrum. On the other hand, it requires multiplexing/demultiplexing equipment.

Part (c) of Figure 3-3 shows another implementation of TDM, this time with a frequency-shift keyed (FSK) modulator. The detailed trade-offs of PSK versus FSK modulation are not critical at this point in time. Both approaches, i.e., PSK and FSK, are discussed here for the purpose of demonstrating the alternatives available.

Moderate modifications of CIE may be required to implement either one of the schemes shown in Figure 3-3. However, these modifications are only at baseband and should affect the RF portions of the PI. Neither will they affect the antenna system.

Baseband modifications of the transponder are also required in order to work with the modified Orbiter equipments. Again, these modifications are not considered severe, compared to modifications which would be required if RF modification were found necessary.

3.1.1.2 Link Budget for SO/SS Link at S-Band

To get a better quantitative idea of the performance of an S-band communication between the Orbiter and the Space Station baseline link budgets have been derived. These are shown in Tables 3-1 and 3-2.

The Shuttle Orbiter to Space Station budget is shown in Table 3-1. For this budget it is assumed that PI/CIE equipment is used such as shown in Figure 3-2. It is also assumed that a linear phase modulation of PI carrier is implemented such as shown in (a) of Figure 3-3.

In one of the versions of the link budget, approximately equal modulation indexes are assumed for the command subcarrier ($\beta_1 = 1.1$ radian) and the voice subcarrier ($\beta_2 = 1.0$ radian). With such a power division, however, the command channel carries

*Here we imply either a modified network transponder or a transponder similar to those used by the payloads.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>CMD 2 kbps</th>
<th>VOICE 16 kbps</th>
<th>CMD 2 kbps</th>
<th>VOICE 16 kbps</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>$\beta_1 = 1.1$ rad</td>
<td>$\beta_2 = 0.5$ rad</td>
<td>$\beta_1 = 0.5$ rad</td>
<td>$\beta_2 = 1.2$ rad</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmitter power (dBm)</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>37</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>5 w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-8.1</td>
<td>-8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit pointing loss (dB)</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIRP (dBm)</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td>30.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path Loss (dB)</td>
<td>-130.4</td>
<td>-130.4</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>D = 37 km F = 2.125 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received pointing loss (dB)</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polarization loss (dB)</td>
<td>-0.3</td>
<td>-0.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received signal power (dBm)</td>
<td>-104.3</td>
<td>-104.3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System noise density (dBm/Hz)</td>
<td>-170</td>
<td>-170</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NF = 4 dB for SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier to noise density (dB-Hz)</td>
<td>65.7</td>
<td>65.7</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modulation loss (dB)</td>
<td>-6.1</td>
<td>-7.0</td>
<td>-13.2</td>
<td>-4.3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data rate (dB-Hz)</td>
<td>33(a)</td>
<td>42(b)</td>
<td>33(a)</td>
<td>42(b)</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receive $E_b/N_0$ (dB)</td>
<td>26.6</td>
<td>16.7</td>
<td>19.5</td>
<td>19.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical $E_b/N_0$ (dB)</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation loss (dB)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required $E_b/N_0$ (dB)</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link Margin (dB)</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>5.1</td>
<td>7.9</td>
<td>7.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(a) = 2 kbps CMDs  
(b) = 16 kbps VOICE

Table 3-1. S-Band Link, Shuttle Orbiter to Space Station
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>TLM 16 kbps</th>
<th>VOICE 16 kbps</th>
<th>TLM ONLY 16 kbps</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmitter power (dBm)</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>5w</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td>0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit pointing loss (dB)</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>-3*</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIRP (dBm)</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>31</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path Loss (dB)</td>
<td>-131</td>
<td>-131</td>
<td></td>
<td>D = 37 km, F = 2.29 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received pointing loss (dB)</td>
<td>-1</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polarization loss (dB)</td>
<td>-0.3</td>
<td>-0.3</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rockwell Value</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-8.1</td>
<td>-8.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received signal power (dBm)</td>
<td>-104.9</td>
<td>-108.9</td>
<td></td>
<td>Rockwell Value, NF = 6 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System noise density (dBm/Hz)</td>
<td>-168</td>
<td>-168</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier to noise density (dB-Hz)</td>
<td>63.1</td>
<td>59.1</td>
<td></td>
<td>β₁ = 1.1 rads, β₂ = 1.0 rad, TLM only β₁ = 1.1 rads</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Modulation loss (dB)</td>
<td>-6.1</td>
<td>-7.0</td>
<td>-3.4*</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data rate (dB-Hz)</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receive E_b/N_0 (dB)</td>
<td>15.0</td>
<td>14.1</td>
<td>13.7</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical E_b/N_0 (dB)</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation loss (dB)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required E_b/N_0 (dB)</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link Margin (dB)</td>
<td>3.4</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>2.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Voice Subcarrier Modulation is removed to allow for more TLM power when receive and transmit pointing losses increase from 1 to 3 dB.

Table 3-2  S-band Link, Space Station to Shuttle Orbiter
about 10 dB more margin than the voice channel, although both channels show adequate margins.

To provide for more even distribution of link margins, the modulation indexes can be readjusted as shown in Table 3-1. With such power division link margins are about 8 dB for both channels. With such margins a total pointing loss can increase by as much as 6 dB with the links still being operational.

Table 3-2 shows the Space Station to Shuttle Orbiter link budget. From the table, it is evident that this link has much less margin than the forward link. This is due to the fact the data rate is 16 kbps on both links. Because of the relatively low margins, a total increase of 3dB in pointing loss may "wipe out" the voice link. Thus, a budget for a contingency operation link with telemetry only going from Space Station to Orbiter is shown.

The consideration of such a contingency depends on the performance of the S-band antennas at the Space Station. If such antennas have adequate coverage, then our concern for the voice link failing at 37 km is not valid. Thus, a better understanding of the antenna coverage of the S-band at the Space Station is in order before the final conclusion can be drawn. Another possibility is to consider the use of steered beam S-band antennas on the Shuttle. Such possibility is being considered as a possible upgrade of Shuttle avionics.

3.1.2  Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station Link at Ku-Band

3.1.2.1. Implementation Consideration

Figure 3-4 shows the functional representation of an all Ku-band link between the Orbiter and the Space Station. The implementation shown is based on utilization of the Ku-band multiple access (MA) system which is planned for the Space Station. Thus, at the Space Station end the Orbiter is handled as one of the multiple users of the RF resources assigned to the Station. Such handling, therefore, does not present additional burdened to the Station.
On the Orbiter end, however, Ku-band equipment identical, or similar to that employed by Station's user space vehicles (S/V) must be utilized. For the Orbiter this may involve considerable amount of new equipment installation and integration. Of particular, concern may be the integration of Ku-band antennas into the Orbiter's antenna systems ensemble. The exact nature of such an impact requires further, more detailed study of all of the factors involved. More information for such a study will become available when the configuration for the Space Station is better defined.

3.1.2.2 *Link Budget for SO/SS Link at Ku-Band*

Table 3-3 shows a link budget for a Ku-band implementation of the command and voice communication links between Shuttle Orbiter and the Space Station. Table 3-4 shows the corresponding return link between the SS and SO. The power division is assumed to be proportional to the data rates.

In all, it appears that within the assumptions used in Tables 3-3 and 3-4, the Ku-band implementation of the SO/SS link has a relatively good margin.

3.1.3 *Hybrid S-Band/Ku-Band Implementation*

Figure 3-5 shows a functional representation of a hybrid link which utilizes both the S-band and Ku-band equipment. As indicated in the figure, the S-band link is used only for the commands and telemetry interchange between the Orbiter and the Space Station. In this case, the Space Station is treated as a payload. Voice communication takes place via a Ku-band link, such as the MA link used by the Space Station to communicate with other space vehicles.

These appears to be no obvious advantage to this type of operation for the following reason: If the Ku-band MA system is installed into the Orbiter, then this system should be utilizable for all of the communication interchange between the Orbiter and Space Station. The only possible utilization of the S-band link may be in the earlier phases of the assembly of the Space Station. Once the Ku-band system is installed on the Orbiter then S-
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>CMD 2 kbps</th>
<th>VOICE 16 kbps</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmitter power (dBm)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td></td>
<td>1 watt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit pointing loss (dB)</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIRP (dBm)</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path Loss (dB)</td>
<td>-146.5</td>
<td>R = 37 km @ 13.67 GHz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>24</td>
<td></td>
<td>High gain antenna at SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received pointing loss (dB)</td>
<td>-0.2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polarization loss (dB)</td>
<td>-1.8</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received signal power (dBm)</td>
<td>98.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System noise density (dBm/Hz)</td>
<td>-169</td>
<td></td>
<td>NF = 5 dB at both ends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier to noise density (dB-Hz)</td>
<td>70.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Division loss (dB)</td>
<td>-9.5</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>Power division set by data rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data rate (dB-Hz)</td>
<td>33</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receive $E_b/N_0$ (dB)</td>
<td>28</td>
<td>28</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical $E_b/N_0$ (dB)</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation loss (dB)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required $E_b/N_0$ (dB)</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link Margin (dB)</td>
<td>16.4</td>
<td>16.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3-3. Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station Link at Ku-band for Command and Voice
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>SO/SS</th>
<th>CMD 2 kbps</th>
<th>VOICE 16 kbps</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Transmitter power (dBm)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>1 watt</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>24.6</td>
<td>High gain antenna at SS</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit pointing loss (dB)</td>
<td>-0.2</td>
<td>-0.2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIRP (dBm)</td>
<td>52.4</td>
<td>52.4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path Loss (dB)</td>
<td>-147.1</td>
<td>-147.1</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received pointing loss (dB)</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polarization loss (dB)</td>
<td>-1.8</td>
<td>-1.8</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received signal power (dBm)</td>
<td>-98.5</td>
<td>-98.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>System noise density (dBm/Hz)</td>
<td>-169</td>
<td>-169</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Carrier to noise density (dB-Hz)</td>
<td>70.5</td>
<td>70.5</td>
<td>NF = 5 dB at both ends</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Power Division loss (dB)</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>Power division set by rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Data rate (dB-Hz)</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receive $E_b/N_0$ (dB)</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td>25.5</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Theoretical $E_b/N_0$ (dB)</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Implementation loss (dB)</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Required $E_b/N_0$ (dB)</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td>11.6</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link Margin (dB)</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td>13.9</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 3-4. Space Station/ Shuttle Orbiter Link at Ku-Band for Telemetry and Voice

18
Figure 3-5. Orbiter/Space Station Links at S-Band and Ku-Band
band system use to the communicate with the Station will only impose the requirement of carrying S-band equipment on the latter beyond the IOC phase.
4.0 DISCUSSION OF TRADE-OFFS

From the S-band and Ku-band link budgets presented above, it appears that either implementation alone can meet the requirements for the Shuttle Orbiter/Space Station link. Specifically, as described in Section 3.1.1.1, there is a possibility of adapting some of the existing S-band payload link equipment for providing a two-way voice capability to the link. This capability will permit the Orbiter to satisfy the voice link requirements without actually using the Ku-band MA system.

From the standpoint of the Orbiter, this appears to be a relatively low-cost solution, requiring only minor baseband modifications to CIE or similar equipment and the corresponding transponder. Neither RF nor any antenna modifications will be required. However, remaining at S-band beyond the IOC capability will impose dual-band (S and Ku-bands) operation requirement on the Space Station. The impact of the latter requirement remains to be assessed.

Among the factors to be used in the evaluation process are the following criteria:

- Authorized Frequency Band(s)
- Sufficient Bandwidth
- Minimum Interference
- Development Risk
- User Impact
- Growth Potential
- IOC cost.

Explanation of these criteria is presented below:

**Authorized Frequency Band(s)**

This refers to exclusion of UHF bands from use in future NASA space programs. In the future this way change, but for the purpose of this report, UHF was not considered.
**Sufficient Bandwidth**

To accommodating simultaneous users, Space Station communication link require considerable amount of RF bandwidth. This is particularly true when MSC operates with multiple video channels. Bandwidth at S-band is limited. Ku-band is much more acceptable from this standpoint.

**Minimum Interference**

This implies both the effect of our links (i.e., space links) on other users as well as the effect of other emitters on our links. There is considerable history of ground-based interference on UHF and S-band links. In comparison, Ku-band looks promising from the standpoint of minimum interference.

**Development Risk**

This criterion is based on the technology state and the amount of available design history. From this standpoint, an all S-band implementation rates high.

**User Impact**

The amount of modifications required by Orbiter equipment can be considered as user impact. For S-band operation, this impact is minimal. For Ku-band, the impact is high, but the fact that MA Ku-band system will be developed from other users can reduce the cost of the impact.

**Growth Potential**

From this standpoint of the Space Station, the Ku-band system appears to be most desirable because it can accommodate more users in the future. Use of specialized S-band equipment on the Space Station limits growth.

**IOC Cost**

This criterion needs analytical modeling based on the experience and projections of Phase B contractors for the Space Station. From the point of view of the Shuttle Orbiter, the S-band approach appears to be most cost effective for the IOC. For the
long term considerations, this may not be true and the Ku-band approach may be more desirable.

The criteria listed above indicate that the process of evaluating various approaches is rather complex. The current, on-going Space Station programs and design definitions will provide more data for carrying out a more accurate assessment.
5.0 REFERENCES

APPENDIX L

SHUTTLE KU-BAND RADAR INTERFERENCE TO SPACE STATION LINKS
SHUTTLE KU-BAND RADAR INTERFERENCE TO SPACE STATION LINKS

Contract No. NA9-17414
Interim Report

Prepared for
NASA Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center
Houston, Texas 77058
Technical Monitor: Dean Bratton

Prepared by
Sergei Udalov
James Dodds
Axiomatix
9841 Airport Blvd., Suite 912
Los Angeles, CA 90045

Axiomatix Report No. R8609-2
September 26, 1986
# Table of Contents

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Overview and Summary</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuttle Ku-Band Radar Interference to Space Station Links</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Shuttle Ku-Band Radar Interference to Space Station Receive Links</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ku Radar Frequencies and Related Interference</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Determining Ku Radar Power at Space Station Receivers</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ku Radar Power at Space Station Receivers</td>
<td>6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Relative Spectral Density of Ku-Radar and SS Communication Links</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ku Radar Interference to SGL</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radar Power Level Greatly Exceeds Received SGL Forward Link Power</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ku Radar Interference Spectral Density</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectral Representation of Radar Interference to Forward Link — High Rate Data</td>
<td>10</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Potential Fixes for Ku Radar Interference to SGL</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operational Fix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Operational Fix Using Ku Radar in Beacon Mode</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ku-Radar Interference to SGL When Radar Is in Beacon Mode at 13.883 GHz</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RF and Receiver Fix</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antenna Sidelobe Canceller</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Antenna Sidelobe Pulse Canceller Functional Block Diagram</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidelobe Pulse Canceller Operation Description</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidelobe Pulse Canceller — Pros and Cons</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Pulse Estimator Canceller</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RF Pulse Canceller Using PLL/CAD Pulse Estimator (Ref. 2)</td>
<td>17</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>PLL/CAD RF Pulse Canceller Operation Description</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
OVERVIEW AND SUMMARY

The problem of radar interference arises when the shuttle rendezvous with the Space Station using its Ku-band radar which frequency hops between five frequencies in the range from about 13.8 GHz to 14.0 GHz.

Of particular concern is the radar frequency (out of five) at 13.779 GHz. This frequency is only 4 MHz away from the 13.775 GHz Space Ground Link (SGL) received by the Space Station from TDRS. The Ku-band radar signal enters Space Station's SGL receiver via sidelobes of the high gain antenna pointed to TDRS.

The estimates indicate that the peak Ku-band radar power intercepted by sidelobes of SGL receiver when shuttle is 10 km away may be in the order of – 40 dBm (peak) for a sidelobe level of – 30 dB. In contrast, the nominal value of SGL signal at the Space Station receiver may be about – 80 dBm. This presents interference-to-signal ratio of about 40 dB.

Several technical as well operational "work-arounds" to solve the interference problem have been considered by Rockwell Space Station study team. In principle, we agree with these findings within the scope of "pros and cons" defined by Rockwell team. In addition, however, we are considering such possibilities as:

1) Operational fix

Use only a single radar frequency for Space Station rendezvous taking advantage of station's large radar cross section which may be also enhanced by a suitable reflector. In this case the radar frequency will be in the middle of the radar band, i.e., around 13.88 GHz, which is the frequency for beacon mode. The reflector must be optimized for returning circularly-polarized (CP) RF pulses such as used in beacon mode.

2) RF and Receiver Fixes

Use of cancellation techniques such as:

   a) antenna sidelobe cancellation
b) precision pulse cancellation based on accurate amplitude and phase information with respect to the received radar pulse.

The operational fix appears to be most desirable from standpoint of requiring minimum amount of new hardware for either Space Station or TDRSS. However, feasibility of precision approach and rendezvous using the beacon mode for skin return from Space Station remains to be established.

RF and receiver fixes using cancellation techniques are still available if operational fixes are not accepted. The advantage of these techniques for solving SGL interference is that they do not require any operational coordination. In other words, these techniques belong into "set them and forget them" category. Moderate hardware development is required, however, at the Space Station receiver.

We have also examined the Ku-band radar interference level to the reception by the Space Station MA receiver of the signals transmitted by users such FF, OMV, EMU and the NSTS itself. These signals arrive at SS in 13.64 – 13.70 GHz NB return band and in 14.00 – 14.30 GHz WB return band. These signals may potentially be interfered with the extreme lower and upper radar transmission frequencies, respectively.

Our analysis, however, indicates that with the exception of OMV and FF wideband return at maximum ranges, the radar interference is below thermal noise even when the users are at their respective maximum ranges.

Link margin degradation to OMV and FF video WB return links is only about 1.5 dB leaving margins of 2.6 dB and 4.3 dB, respectively. Furthermore, the estimated 1.5 dB degradation is based on a worst case assumption that the Orbiter is approaching the Space Station along the axis of the high gain (46.3 dB) antennas used for communication with FF and OMV at long ranges. Operationally, this may not be the case.

Thus, it appears that the major remaining problem is to deal with Ku radar interference to the reception of the SGL.

The material that follows represents our analysis and other support data dealing with Ku radar interference to Space Station communications.
SHUTTLE KU-BAND RADAR INTERFERENCE TO SPACE STATION LINKS

BY

SERGEI UDALOV
JAMES DODDS

AXIOMATIX

SEPTEMBER 1986
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>FREQUENCIES</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>$f_1 = 13.779$ GHz</td>
<td>• Direct inband interference to SGL 12.5 Mbps link to Space Station</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$f_2 = 13.831$ GHz</td>
<td>• May potentially interfere with NB MA return links in the 13.64 GHz to 13.70 GHz range</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$f_3 = 13.883$ GHz</td>
<td>• Beacon mode frequency (fixed frequency mode)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$f_4 = 13.935$ GHz</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>$f_5 = 13.987$ GHz</td>
<td>• Potential interference to WB user return at 14.15 GHz</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• COMPUTE KU RADAR POWER IMPINGING UPON THE SPACE STATION

• TO FIND RADAR POWER WHICH ACTUALLY REACHES INPUTS OF VARIOUS COMMUNICATION RECEIVERS MODIFY RADAR POWER OBTAINED IN STEP ABOVE BY ANTENNA GAINS AND RECEIVER LOSSES OF THE APPROPRIATE LINKS

• ANTENNA GAINS FOR VARIOUS LINKS ARE ASSUMED AS FOLLOWS:

  **TDRS SGL** \( G_A = 49.4 \text{ DB} \)  \[ \text{SIDELOBES GAINS} \quad G(-30) = 19.4 \text{ DB} \]
  \[ G(-40) = 9.4 \text{ DB} \]
  \[ G(-50) = -0.6 \text{ DB} \]  

  **MA USERS**

  HIGH GAIN \( G = 46.3 \text{ DB} \) \[ G(-30) = 16.3 \text{ DB} \]
  MEDIUM GAIN \( G = 24 \text{ DB} \)
  OMNI \( G = 3 \text{ DB} \)

• TABLE THAT FOLLOWS USES THESE GAINS FOR RADAR POWER CALCULATIONS
## KU RADAR POWER AT SPACE STATION RECEIVERS

### TABLE 1

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>LINKS AFFECTED BY RADAR</th>
<th>TDRS FWD SGL SIDELOBES</th>
<th>WB RET. VIDEO</th>
<th>NB RET. TLM</th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>-50</td>
<td>-40</td>
<td>-30</td>
<td>FF/OMV</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Ku Radar Peak power (dBm)</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>HGA</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Transmit circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radar antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>81.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radar pointing loss (dB)</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>N/A</td>
<td>-135.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EIRP (dBm)</td>
<td>81.7</td>
<td>81.7</td>
<td>81.7</td>
<td>53.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path Loss (dB)</td>
<td>-135.2</td>
<td>-135.2</td>
<td>-135.2</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received Signal at SS (dBm)</td>
<td>-53.5</td>
<td>-53.5</td>
<td>-53.5</td>
<td>19.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Receiver antenna gain (dB)</td>
<td>-0.6</td>
<td>9.4</td>
<td>19.4</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Polarization loss (dB)</td>
<td>-3.5</td>
<td>-4</td>
<td>-4</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received circuit loss (dB)</td>
<td>-1.5</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-2</td>
<td>-4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radar Power at SS Receiver (dBm)</td>
<td>-19.1</td>
<td>-29.1</td>
<td>-39.1</td>
<td>-13.2</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

**Notes:**
- Shuttle at 10 km
- Radar Pulse Width = 66.3 sec
- Radar PRF = 3 KHz
- HGA = MA High Gain Antenna (46.3 dB)
- MGA = MA Medium Gain Antenna (24 dB)
- HGA/SL = MA High Gain Antenna Sidelobe (≈ 30 dB)

*Radar is LP, Communication is CP
RELATIVE SPECTRAL DENSITY OF KU-RADAR AND SS COMMUNICATION LINKS

Conditions: Shuttle at 10 km
Radar Pulse width = 66.3 μsec
Radar PRF = 3 KHz
RADAR POWER LEVEL GREATLY EXCEEDS RECEIVED SGL FORWARD LINK POWER

TWTA BYPASS MODE AT APPROXIMATELY .8 KM

COMMANDABLE 24 DB POWER MODE CHANGE (LOW POWER MODE)

SGL ANTENNA SIDELOBE LEVEL RELATIVE TO MAIN LOBE

TDRSS FORWARD LINK SIGNAL LEVEL AT SGL RECEIVER

RANGE BETWEEN STS RADAR AND SS SGL ANTENNA (KM)
Ku radar at 10 km in acquisition mode:

\[ \tau \text{ (pulse width)} = 66.4 \mu\text{sec} \]

\[ \tau \text{ (interpulse period)} = 333.3 \mu\text{sec} \text{ (PRF = 3 KHz)} \]

\[ d_1 \text{ (pulse duty factor)} = \frac{66.4 \mu\text{sec}}{333.3 \mu\text{sec}} = 0.2 \]

\[ d_2 \text{ (frequency dwell duty factor)} = 0.2 \text{ (one frequency out of five)} \]

Power in center line of radar = \( P_{\text{peak}} \times d_1^2 \times d_2^2 \)

or in dB  \[ P = P_{\text{peak}}(\text{dBm}) + 20 \log (0.2) + 20 \log (0.2) \]

\[ = P_{\text{peak}} - 14 \text{ dB} - 14 \text{ dB} \]

\[ = P_{\text{peak}} - 28 \text{ dB} \]

Example: For SGL receiver \((-30 \text{ dB SL)}\) peak radar power is \(-39.1 \text{ dBm}.\) Thus

Center Spectral Line Power = \(-39.1 \text{ dBm} - 28 \text{ dB} = -67.1 \text{ dBm}.\)

Plot of corresponding spectral envelope is shown on next page.
SPECTRAL REPRESENTATION OF RADAR INTERFERENCE TO FORWARD LINK—HIGH DATA RATE

-67.1 DBM CENTER LINE

$(\frac{\sin X}{X})^2$ RADAR SPECTRUM ENVELOPE

RADAR SPECTRUM ENVELOPE
PULSE WIDTH = 66.4 MICRO SEC,
PRF = 3 KHZ, RANGE = 10 KM

-153.6 DBM/Hz

SGL FORWARD LINK SPECTRUM
DATA RATE = 12.5 MHz

13.779 GHZ KU RADAR LINE

= 13.775 GHZ
FOLLOWING FIXES WERE CONSIDED BY AXIOMATIX IN ADDITION TO FIXES ALREADY CONSIDERED BY OTHER SPACE STATION CONTRACTORS:

OPERATIONAL FIX

- USE KU BAND RADAR BEACON MODE AT UNHOPPED FREQUENCY OF 13.883 GHz WITH APPROPRIATE PASSIVE RELECTOR AT SS TO PROVIDE FOR CP RETURN.

RF AND RECEIVER FIXES

- ANTENNA SIDELOBE CANCELLER
- PULSE ESTIMATOR CANCELLER
- HARD LIMITER CANCELLER
- BASEBAND CANCELLER
GENERAL PRINCIPLE

USE ONLY A SINGLE RADAR FREQUENCY FOR SPACE STATION RENDEZVOUS TAKING ADVANTAGE OF STATION'S LARGE RADAR CROSS SECTION WHICH MAY BE ALSO ENHANCED BY A SUITABLE REFLECTOR. IN THIS CASE THE RADAR FREQUENCY WILL BE IN THE MIDDLE OF THE RADAR BAND, I.E., AROUND 13.88 GHZ, WHICH IS THE FREQUENCY FOR BEACON MODE. THE REFLECTOR MUST BE OPTIMIZED FOR RETURNING CIRCULARLY-POLARIZED (CP) RF PULSES SUCH AS USED IN BEACON MODE.

ESTIMATED EFFECTIVENESS

KU RADAR INTERFERENCE IN SGL BANDWIDTH REDUCED TO ABOUT 20 DB BELOW SGL SIGNAL.

REMAINING ISSUES

• ACTIVE MODE IS RHCP TRANSMIT AND RECEIVE, BUT SINGLE BOUNCE WILL RETURN LHCP. HOWEVER, DATA FROM SKOLNIK (REF 1) INDICATES MINIMAL DEGRADATION WITH COMPLEX TARGET. DOUBLE BOUNCE REFLECTOR MAY NOT BE NEEDED.

• KU BAND ACTIVE MODE NOT ADEQUATELY TESTED FOR ACQUISITION PERFORMANCES AND TRACK AT ALL RANGES.
**KU-RADAR INTERFERENCE TO SGL WHEN RADAR IS IN BEACON MODE AT 13.883 GHZ**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Units</th>
<th>Wide Pulse</th>
<th>Narrow Pulse</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) Beacon Mode Pulse Width</td>
<td>µsec</td>
<td>4.15*</td>
<td>0.122**</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) Pulse BW</td>
<td>MHz</td>
<td>0.248</td>
<td>8.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) Interpulse Period</td>
<td>µsec</td>
<td>142.8</td>
<td>142.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) Radar Duty Cycle</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.029</td>
<td>$8.54 \times 10^{-4}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5) Duty Cycle Squared</td>
<td></td>
<td>0.000841</td>
<td>$7.3 \times 10^{-7}$</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6) Peak pwr/Line Ratio</td>
<td>dB</td>
<td>-30.7</td>
<td>-61.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7) Radar Peak Power at SS</td>
<td>dBm</td>
<td>-39.1</td>
<td>-39.1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8) Power in Center Line</td>
<td>dBm</td>
<td>-69.8</td>
<td>-100.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9) Frequency Separation ($\Delta f$)</td>
<td>MHz</td>
<td>108</td>
<td>108</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10) Number of Sidelobes in $\Delta f$</td>
<td>lobes</td>
<td>444</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11) Envelope of Line Density</td>
<td>dB</td>
<td>-63</td>
<td>-32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12) Line Density Envelope</td>
<td>dBm/line</td>
<td>-132.8</td>
<td>-132.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13) Lines in SGL BW (12.5 MHz)</td>
<td>dB</td>
<td>32.5</td>
<td>32.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14) Peak/Null Averaging</td>
<td>dB</td>
<td>-3</td>
<td>-3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15) Polarization Gain/Loss</td>
<td>dB</td>
<td>+3.5</td>
<td>+3.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16) Interference Power in BW</td>
<td>dBm</td>
<td>-99.8</td>
<td>-99.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17) SGL Signal</td>
<td>dBm</td>
<td>-80</td>
<td>-80</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18) S/I Ratio</td>
<td>dB</td>
<td>-19.8</td>
<td>-19.5</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*Initial track, **Final track  
PRF = 7 KHz  
10 log ($d_1$)^2  
From Table 1 (+ 30 dB SL)  
(6) + (7)  
13.883 GHz (Radar) - 13.775 GHz (TDRS)  
In terms of pulse bandwidth (2)  
(sin X/X)^2 maximum envelope w/r to (8)  
(8) + (11)  
1785.7 lines for PRF of 7 KHz  
Not all lines are on maximum envelope  
With respect to Table 1  
(12) + (13) + (14) + (15)  
See note

**Note:** This ratio is for Shuttle at 10 km. Radar power must be reduced as Shuttle approaches Space Station. Means are available to do so manually on Shuttle.
RF AND RECEIVER FIXES
1) Radar pulses enter space station SGL receiver via sidelobes.

2) Omni antenna gain is matched approximately to sidelobes of high gain SGL antenna.

3) Additional gain and phase adjustment is performed on Omni antenna signal.

4) Signal picked up by Omni contains primarily the interference, thus subtracting the amplitude and phase adjusted signal from main antenna signal cancels pulse interference.
SIDEBLOBE PULSE CANCELLER - PROS AND CONS

ADVANTAGES

1) RELATIVELY SIMPLE DESIGN.

2) PULSE CANCELLED AT FRONT END
   THUS RECEIVER OVERLOAD IS
   PREVENTED.

DISADVANTAGES

1) OMNI PATTERN MATCHES SIDELOBES
   ONLY ALONG FEW DIRECTIONS.
   AT OTHER DIRECTIONS CANCELLATION
   IS NOT EFFECTIVE.

2) REQUIRES CONTINUOUS READJUSTMENT
   OF PHASE AND AMPLITUDE OF OMNI
   SIGNAL AS SGL ANTENNA FOLLOWS
   TDRS.
PULSE ESTIMATOR CANCELLER
RF PULSE CANCELLER USING PLL/CAD
PULSE ESTIMATOR (REF. 2)

CAD = COHERENT AMPLITUDE DETECTOR
• SGL IF AND KU RADAR PULSE ARE APPLIED TO IF DELAY LINE AND TO
PLL TUNED TO PULSE FREQUENCY (4 MHz ABOVE IF)

• PLL LOCKS ON TO RADAR PULSE AND COHERENT AMPLITUDE DETECTOR
(CAD) RECOVERS AMPLITUDE INFORMATION

• OUTPUT OF CAD IS FILTERED IN LPF AND IS USED AS AN "ESTIMATE"
OF RADAR PULSE AMPLITUDE

• ESTIMATE SIGNAL OUT OF LPF DRIVES RF MODULATOR WHICH THUS
RECONSTRUCTS THE RADAR PULSE WITH HIGH DEGREE OF ACCURACY

• RECONSTRUCTED RADAR PULSE (AN ESTIMATE) IS SUBTRACTED FROM
DELAYED IF SIGNAL THUS "CANCELLING" THE INTERFERRING RADAR
PULSE AT IF LEVEL
### ADVANTAGES

1) CANCELLER FUNCTIONS REGARDLESS OF SGL ANTENNA ORIENTATION

2) INTERFERENCE IS REMOVED PRIOR TO DATA DEMODULATOR

3) USE OF AMPLITUDE ESTIMATOR MAKES CANCELLER "SELF-ADJUSTING"

### DISADVANTAGES

1) CANCELLATION WORKS BEST IF INTERFERENCE IS MUCH GREATER THAN SIGNAL

2) PERFORMANCE DEGRADES WHEN INTERFERENCE AND SIGNAL ARE ABOUT SAME ORDER OF MAGNITUDE
HARD LIMITER PULSE CANCELLER
- SGL IF AND RADAR PULSE ARE APPLIED TO BANDPASS HARD LIMITER, AMPLIFIER #1 AND ESTIMATION CIRCUIT.

- ESTIMATION CIRCUIT CONTROLS GAIN OF AMPLIFIER #1 TO MAKE ITS OUTPUT EQUAL THE OUTPUT OF HARD LIMITER.

- OUTPUT OF LIMITER CONTAINS MAINLY THE PULSE SIGNAL BECAUSE WEAK SGL SIGNAL IS HIGHLY SUPPRESSED.

- OUTPUT OF ESTIMATOR CONTAINS BOTH THE PULSE AND THE DESIRED SGL SIGNAL

- SUBTRACTOR THUS CANCELS THE STRONG INTERFERING SIGNAL.

- GAIN OF AMPLIFIER 2 IS CONTROLLED BY ESTIMATOR TO BRING UP THE CLEANED UP WEAK SIGNAL TO LEVEL REQUIRED BY DATA DEMODUALTOR.
HARD LIMITER CANCELLER DEMONSTRATED
PERFORMANCE (REF. 3)

Amplitude spectra of band limited direct
sequence spread-spectrum signal plus FM
interferer (vertical axis 10 dB/div; horiz.
axis 5 Mhz/div)

Bit error probability $p_B$ in a spread-spectrum receiver
a) without interferer suppression
b) with interferer suppression

Note: Although performance demonstrated here is for a spread
spectrum signal, it is quite impressive. Interference to
SGL is a similar case where data is wideband compared
to interfering signal
ADVANTAGES

1) CANCELLER FUNCTIONS REGARDLESS OF SGL ANTENNA ORIENTATION

2) INTERFERENCE IS REMOVED PRIOR TO DATA DEMODULATOR

3) USE OF LIMITER AND ESTIMATOR MAKES CANCELLER "SELF-ADJUSTING"

4) CANCELLER WORKS OVER A WIDE RANGE OF INTERFERENCE SIGNAL FREQUENCY OFFSETS.

DISADVANTAGES

1) CANCELLATION WORKS BEST IF INTERFERENCE IS MUCH GREATER THAN SIGNAL

2) PERFORMANCE DEGRADES WHEN INTERFERENCE AND SIGNAL ARE ABOUT SAME ORDER OF MAGNITUDE
BASEBAND CANCELLER
PULSE CANCELLING AT BASEBAND WITH COSTAS LOOP

- RADAR PULSE APPEARS IN Q-CHANNEL OF COSTAS LOOP
- PULSE WAVEFORM IS DELAYED BY 90° AND SUBTRACTED FROM I-CHANNEL
- SUBTRACTION SEPARATES INTERFERENCE FROM DATA

NOTE: THIS IS APPLICABLE TO BI-PHASE MODULATION ONLY
FOR QPSK MORE ELABORATE METHODS MAY BE USED.
PREFERRED APPROACH

- USE OF ACTIVE MODE CENTER FREQUENCY (WITHOUT BEACON) PROVIDES LOWEST COST SOLUTION — NO MODIFICATIONS TO SPACE STATION SYSTEMS.

- REQUIRES INVESTIGATION OF SPACE STATION RADAR CROSS SECTION WITH CP WAVES.

- REQUIRES MORE THOROUGH TEST OF KU-BAND RADAR ACTIVE MODE PERFORMANCE

- MAY REQUIRE PASSIVE RADAR ENHANCEMENT DEVICE.

- MAY RESTRICT SHUTTLE APPROACH VECTORS IF DIRECTIONAL RADAR ENHANCEMENT DEVICE IS REQUIRED.

ALTERNATE APPROACHES

- CANCELLATION METHODS PROVIDE ALTERNATE SOLUTION BUT THEY REQUIRE DEVELOPMENT OF ADDITIONAL HARDWARE.

- CANCELLATION MAY PROVIDE FOR UNRESTRICTED APPROACH DIRECTIONS.
KU RADAR INTERFERENCE TO
SPACE STATION MA LINKS
### KU Radar Interference to Space Station

**MA Links — Sample Calculation**

**Sample Calculation for Flyer (FF) at 2000 km:**

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
<th>Value in dB</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) Ku Radar Frequency</td>
<td>13,987 MHz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) FF Frequency</td>
<td>14,150 MHz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) Number of 15 KHz Sidelobe Separation</td>
<td>10,867</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) Spectrum Envelope Att.</td>
<td></td>
<td>–91 dB</td>
<td>(sin X/X)^2 Maximum Envelope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5) FF Signal Bandwidth</td>
<td>25,000 KHz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6) Number of Sidelobes in Signal Bandwidth</td>
<td>1,667</td>
<td>32.2 dB</td>
<td>Sidelobe is 15 KHz wide (66.3 µsec pulse)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7) Number of PRF Lines in One Sidelobe</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>6 dB</td>
<td>3 KHz PRF</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8) Duty Cycle Squared</td>
<td>0.0016</td>
<td>–28 dB</td>
<td>[d_1^2 d_2^2] where [d_1 = d_2 = 0.2]</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9) Center Line Radar Power</td>
<td></td>
<td>–13.2 dBm</td>
<td>Via FF HGA (See Table 1)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10) Sidelobe Peak/Null Averaging</td>
<td></td>
<td>–3 dB</td>
<td>Not all lines are on maximum envelope</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11) Radar Power in FF BW</td>
<td></td>
<td>–97 dBm</td>
<td>Sum of (4), (6), (7), (8), (9) and (10)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12) Thermal Noise in FF BW</td>
<td></td>
<td>–95 dBm</td>
<td>Table A-1, Appendix A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13) FF Signal Power</td>
<td></td>
<td>–79.4 dBm</td>
<td>Table A-1, Appendix A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14) Thermal Noise SNR</td>
<td></td>
<td>15.6 dB</td>
<td>(13) minus (12)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15) Interference Noise SNR</td>
<td></td>
<td>17.6 dB</td>
<td>(13) minus (11)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>16) Thermal Noise Link Margin</td>
<td></td>
<td>5.8 dB</td>
<td>Table A-1, Appendix A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>17) Margin Loss Due to Data</td>
<td></td>
<td>–1.5 dB</td>
<td>Radar interference adds to thermal noise</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18) Modified Margin</td>
<td></td>
<td>4.3 dB</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
## KU-BAND RADAR INTERFERENCE TO SPACE STATION MA LINKS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th></th>
<th>NB RETURN</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>WB RETURN</th>
<th></th>
<th></th>
<th>COMMENTS</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>FF</td>
<td>OMV</td>
<td>EMV</td>
<td>NSTS</td>
<td>FF</td>
<td>OMV</td>
<td>EMU</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Range (km)</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>37</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal</td>
<td>TLM</td>
<td>VOICE</td>
<td>VIDEO</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link Frequency (GHz)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13.67</td>
<td></td>
<td>14.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Received Power (dBm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-104.8</td>
<td>-98.0</td>
<td>-99.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise BW (KHz)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>64</td>
<td>16</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise BW (dB-Hz)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>48</td>
<td>42</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal Noise Power</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-120.9</td>
<td>-127</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>(dBm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal Noise SNR (dB)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>22.9</td>
<td>21.4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>∆F from nearest radar</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>Frequency (KHz)</td>
<td>109,000 from 13.779 GHz</td>
<td>163,000 FROM 13.987 GHz</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Approx. No. of 15 KHz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>7267</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Sidelobe Separation</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Line Density in</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-151.5</td>
<td>-172</td>
<td>-151.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise BW (dBm/line)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Lines in Noise BW</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>16</td>
<td>4</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Radar Interference Power</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-142.5</td>
<td>-163.5</td>
<td>-148.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in Noise BW (dBm)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Signal/Interference Ratio</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>37.7</td>
<td>44.5</td>
<td>63.9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>in Noise BW (dB)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Interference Below Thermal Noise (dB)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>-21.6</td>
<td>-21.6</td>
<td>-42.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Link Margin Degrad. (dB)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>NEGLIGIBLE</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Remaining Margin (dB)</td>
<td>6.3*</td>
<td>7.7*</td>
<td>6.2*</td>
<td>13.2*</td>
<td>4.3</td>
<td>2.6</td>
<td>9.7*</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
• ANALYSIS INDICATES THAT THERE MAY BE ABOUT 1.5 dB MARGIN DEGRADATION TO RECEPTION OF WIDEBAND VIDEO SIGNALS FROM FF AND OMV WHEN THESE VEHICLES ARE AT THEIR MAXIMUM RANGES OF 2000 KM AND 185 KM, RESPECTIVELY.

• THE MARGIN DEGRADATION OF 1.5 dB IS BASED ON WORST CASE ASSUMPTION OF KU RADAR BEING IN THE BEAM OF HIGH GAIN ANTENNAS SERVICING FF AND OMV VIDEO LINKS. NEVERTHELESS, THERE STILL IS A REMAINING MARGIN FOR THESE LINKS.

• OTHER LINKS DO NOT EXHIBIT DEGRADATION NEITHER IN THE NB NOR IN THE WB RETURN LINKS.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>FF to SS</th>
<th>SS to FF</th>
<th>OMV to SS</th>
<th>OMV to SS</th>
<th>OMV to SS</th>
<th>SS to OMV</th>
<th>SS to OMV</th>
<th>NTSS to SS</th>
<th>NTSS to SS</th>
<th>EMU to SS</th>
<th>EMU to SS</th>
<th>SS to EMU</th>
<th>SS to EMU</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Tx power (dBm)</td>
<td>30</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rx loss (dB)</td>
<td>0.7</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>3.3</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>ERP (dBm)</td>
<td>58.1</td>
<td>57.8</td>
<td>48.3</td>
<td>40.8</td>
<td>40.8</td>
<td>41.1</td>
<td>52.4</td>
<td>28.0</td>
<td>52.4</td>
<td>28.0</td>
<td>52.4</td>
<td>28.0</td>
<td>28.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Path loss (dB)</td>
<td>181.5</td>
<td>181.2</td>
<td>181.0</td>
<td>160.5</td>
<td>115.2</td>
<td>160.6</td>
<td>181.1</td>
<td>115.7</td>
<td>146.5</td>
<td>147.1</td>
<td>115.5</td>
<td>115.7</td>
<td>115.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prop loss (dB)</td>
<td>81.1</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>81.0</td>
<td>117.0</td>
<td>180.6</td>
<td>181.2</td>
<td>181.3</td>
<td>146.8</td>
<td>148.9</td>
<td>117.3</td>
<td>122.6</td>
<td>117.5</td>
<td>123.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rx gain (dB)</td>
<td>46.3</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>30.6</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>48.3</td>
<td>13.8</td>
<td>13.6</td>
<td>24</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>23</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rx loss (dB)</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
<td>0.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rx power (dBm)</td>
<td>-104.8</td>
<td>-104.3</td>
<td>-100.0</td>
<td>-78.2</td>
<td>-75.7</td>
<td>-78.4</td>
<td>-98.5</td>
<td>-98.5</td>
<td>-98.5</td>
<td>-98.5</td>
<td>-98.5</td>
<td>-98.5</td>
<td>-98.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise fig (dB)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise BW (kHz)</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1222</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
<td>1200</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>SAR (dBm)</td>
<td>15.8</td>
<td>16.1</td>
<td>17.9</td>
<td>22.0</td>
<td>42.8</td>
<td>18.3</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>24.0</td>
<td>24.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Intra SAR (dB)</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>10.2</td>
<td>9.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Code gain (dB)</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Print loss (dB)</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Les loss (dB)</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
<td>1.6</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Requ SAR (dB)</td>
<td>9.0</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>10.4</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>15.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Margin (dB)</td>
<td>8.6</td>
<td>6.3</td>
<td>7.5</td>
<td>7.7</td>
<td>27.6</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>8.0</td>
<td>28.2</td>
<td>13.2</td>
<td>12.6</td>
<td>9.7</td>
<td>6.2</td>
<td>30.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

REFERENCES


PRELIMINARY CONSIDERATIONS FOR ANTENNA SWITCHING, POWER CONTROL, AND AGC FUNCTIONS FOR SPACE STATION MULTIPLE ACCESS SYSTEM

Interim Report

Contract No. NAS9-17414

Prepared for
NASA Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center
Houston, TX 77058

Technical Monitor: Dean Bratton

Prepared by

Sergei Udalov
Axiomatix
9841 Airport Boulevard
Suite 912
Los Angeles, CA 90045

Axiomatix Report No. R8701-2
January 29, 1987
1.0 INTRODUCTION

This interim report includes some preliminary considerations for antenna switching, power control, and AGC functions for the Space Station's multiple-access (MA) system. The background for the general requirements for these functions is given below.

Antenna Switching

Antenna switching will be required to provide for optimum link conditions despite the relative movement of the MA system users with respect to the Space Station (SS). For movement within the proximity operations zone, several omni antennas located at various points of the Space Station will provide for near-spherical coverage, but some criteria for selecting the proper antenna are required. Also, the quality of the received signal must be sampled to determine when to switch from an omni to a medium gain antenna and vice versa, the latter scenario being a part of power control.

Power Control

The users of the Space Station's MA system transmit signals at two widely separated rates. For example, the telemetry rate is about 100 Kbps and the video rate is about 22 Mbps. Also, the range to a user may be from about a few meters (EMU) to about 37 km (OMV, NSTS). This creates a potential problem of interchannel interference and receiver overloading. Thus, means of controlling EIRP of users to reduce the Min/Max signal differential at Space Station's receivers is required.

AGC Function

The multiple access system of the Space Station receives Ku-band signals from several users. These signals are picked up by antennas placed at various locations of the SS. The signals are amplified, filtered and supplied via a bus (IF or Fiber-Optical) to the
programmable signal processors (PSP) for data demodulation. The type and distribution of the AGC function has to be identified.

The role of Axiomatix in dealing with these requirements can be summarized as follows:

1) Identify key issue in each of these tasks,
2) Analyze tradeoffs between available alternatives,
3) Recommend baseline approaches.

As the title of this report indicates, the material presented here is only of a preliminary nature. The report addresses primarily the issues as we see them now. It also lists additional tasks to be carried out by us towards the recommendation of a baseline design for each of the functions specified. In some cases we also identify the approaches which appear promising at this point. In arriving at the material presented in this report we had to examine the technical material contained in the reports prepared by the Phase B contractors. Not all of the aspects of the MA system design are finalized in these reports. Thus, we had to assume certain baseline approaches which were rated in these reports as most promising candidates. In other cases, we had to apply our best engineering judgement and expertise to identify the issues.

The material which follows is presented in a vu-graph form to simplify the process of communicating our ideas. As concepts and baselines will evolve and grow in complexity, a conventional format of the report will be utilized.
REQUIREMENT

Identify and analyze candidate Space Station multiple access (MA) antenna switching scenarios, i.e., use of a spare receiver to scan all antennas for best signal, perform BER estimates, etc.

- Identify key issues of each scheme considered
- Recommend a baseline design

BACKGROUND

Antenna switching will be required to provide for optimum link conditions despite the relative movement of the MA system users with respect to the Space Station. For movement within the proximity operations zone, several omni antennas located at various points of the Space Station will provide for near-spherical coverage, but some criteria for selecting the proper antenna are required. Also, the quality of the received signal must be sampled to determine when to switch from an omni to a medium gain antenna and vice versa, the latter scenario being a part of power control.
### ANTENNA SELECTION CRITERION ALTERNATIVES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ALTERNATIVE</th>
<th>COMMENT</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1) Received Power</td>
<td>Absolute received power is measured in a bandwidth matched to signal rate. Assuming good calibration and good receiver gain stability, the decision is made based on signal level.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2) SNR</td>
<td>Signal-to-noise ratio is measured by comparing signal strength in a matched bandwidth to a noise level in another bandwidth. What is really measured is S+N/N ratio.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3) Variance of Measurement</td>
<td>Some parameter of signal quality such as jitter, autocorrelation function or some other indicator of signal &quot;noisiness&quot; is used to determine the status of the link.</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4) BER</td>
<td>BER is monitored and when it increases above a preset level, the receiver is switched to a different antenna. (See next chart for comments regarding BER measurement).</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
STAnEMENT

BER testing requires a known bit stream pattern (non-corrupted by noise) to indicate the error rate.

PROBLEM

What is to be used as a "known pattern" in a return link data stream?

SOME ALTERNATIVES ARE

(a) Sync words which have known bit sequence patterns
   
   Adv. Frame sync words are always present in the telemetry data.
   
   Disadv. Sync words constitute a small fraction of the return link data stream. This slows down the response of a BER test.

(b) Errors detected in the error correction code decoding.
   
   Adv. BER detection response may be faster than that using sync words
   
   Disadv. Not all links are coded to allow for this feature.
Following issues still remain to be addressed:

- Determine optimum method and/or criterion for antenna selection. Additional investigation is still required in this area.

- Investigate best method for connecting a signal sampling receiver to various antennas. One approach is to use a spare receiver that continuously scans and samples all channels on all antennas. Signal strength data obtained this way can be used by any channel when the need arises. An alternate way would be to use the spare receiver on a demand assignment basis only by a channel which is losing the signal strength. The tradeoffs between these two approaches need to be investigated.

- Interaction between the antenna selection/switching function and the closely associated functions of power control and AGC requires careful examination.
POWER CONTROL CONSIDERATIONS
REQUIREMENT

Determine realistic power control window considering hardware restrictions and algorithm complexity.

- Recommend baseline scheme and window.

BACKGROUND

The users of the Space Station's multiple access (MA) system transmit signals at two widely separated rates. For example, the telemetry rate is about 100 Kbps and the video rate is about 22 Mbps. Also, the range to a user may be from about few meters (EMU) to about 37 km (OMV, NSTS). This creates a potential problem of interchannel interference and receiver overloading. Thus, means of controlling EIRP of users to reduce the Min/Max signal differential at Space Station's receivers is required.
FACTORS TO CONSIDER:

GENERAL

- Range variation (near/far)
- Antenna directivity considerations
- Ground irradiation (is it a problem?)

USER

- EIRP levels at user end
- EIRP control methods (steps vs. continuous)

SPACE STATION

- Required realistic power window
- Received power sensing methods
- Interfaces with other related functions at the Space Station (i.e., antenna selection, AGC)
USER POWER CONTROL BY RELATIVE AGC COMPARISON

SPACE STATION

RECEIVER CH. 1
AGC1

RECEIVER CH. 2
AGC2

RECEIVER CH. N
AGCN

DIPLEXER

R1

R2

CMDS

INCLUDES COMMAND TO REDUCE USER EIRP

USER XPONDER CH. 1

USER XPONDER CH. 2

CH 2 XMTR

AGC COMPARISON (RELATIVE)

POWER CONTROL COMMAND

OTHER COMMANDS

USER RETURN LINK DATA
**FUNCTION:** To prevent adjacent channel interference degradation to a weak signal from a stronger signal.

**SCENARIO:** User at close range generates adjacent channel interference to a signal received from another user at a longer range. Primary mode of interference is via insufficient filtering of spectral sidelobes in the adjacent channel.

**IMPLEMENTATION:**

- Levels of AGC signals are sampled and levels from adjacent channels are compared.

- When a difference exceeding a preset level is detected, a power control command is generated.

- Power control command is transmitted to the close range user via a standard command link.

- User reduces EIRP by either transmitter power control, or antenna switching, or both.
(a) Amplifier Bypass Switching

(b) Amplifier Bypass and Antenna Switching
In the area of the power control, the following tasks/issues remain to be addressed:

- Based on available link budget information establish the min/max values of the Ku-band signal received by the Space Station from various users.

- Identify users which may have switchable antennas.

- Consider a baseline configuration for a typical user transmitter and make reasonable assumptions of how much of transmitter power control can be accomplished. Do same for a user which can have both transmitter power and antenna switching.

- Identify factors which determine the power control window from a standpoint of:
  - Interchannel interference
  - Equipment functions at SS (front end, bus system, etc.)

- Consider the interaction between the power control function and the related functions of antenna switching and AGC.
AGC FUNCTION CONSIDERATIONS
REQUIREMENTS

Analyze approaches to performing AGC function at receiver front end, i.e., coherent versus non-coherent, etc.

- Identify key issues in tradeoff of approaches
- Make recommendations.

BACKGROUND

The multiple access (MA) system of the Space Station (SS) receives Ku-band signals from multiple users. These signals are picked up by several antennas placed at various locations of the SS. The signals are amplified, filtered and supplied via a bus (IF or Fiber-Optical) to the programmable signal processors (PSP) for data demodulation. The type and distribution of the AGC function has to be identified.
AGC FUNCTION ALTERNATIVES

OPTION A: Non-coherent AGC at the Antenna Group Receiver

OPTION B: Coherent AGC at the Antenna Group Receiver with AGC control signal supplied by PSP

OPTION C: Non-coherent AGC at the Antenna Group Receiver and an additional coherent AGC at PSP.
IMPLEMENTATION

Non-coherent AGC is applied at the antenna group receiver. There is no other AGC beyond the front end receiver.

ADVANTAGES

• Dynamic range of received signals is compressed prior to the bus, thus minimizing the crossmodulation in the bus driver and the interface units.

• Relative simplicity.

DISADVANTAGES

• Considerable RF/IF gain (80 to 100 dB) is required from the RF/IF segments of the antenna group receiver to develop non-coherent AGC for the weak signals.

• Strong signals primarily are affected by the noncoherent AGC unless additional gain is provided prior to BIU.
COHERENT AGC AT ANTENNA GROUP RECEPTOR SUPPLIED BY PSP (OPTION B)

N = NUMBER OF RF CHANNELS PER ANTENNA
M = NUMBER OF ANTENNAS PER GROUP
BIU = BUS INTERFACE UNIT

I/N = N-WAY POWER DIVIDER
N/I = N-WAY POWER COMBINER
IMPLEMENTATION

Coherent AGC is developed by a PSP and the AGC signal is fed back to the antenna group receiver(s) via a bus.

ADVANTAGES

- AGC function is provided for the weak signals.

- Optimum receiver gain can be accomplished at various IF frequencies eliminating requirement for excessive gain within any one receiver segment.

DISADVANTAGES

- Two way bus must be provided to carry the AGC signal from the PSP back to the antenna group receiver.

- Receiver and PSP selector matrices must handle additional signals (i.e., the AGC signals).

- Relative complexity of AGC function implementation with physically separated front end/receiver/PSP units.
NON-COHERENT AGC AT ANTENNA GROUP RECEIVER AND COHERENT AGC AT PSP (OPTION C)

**ANTENNA GROUP**

![Diagram of Antenna Group]

**MODULE**

![Diagram of Module]

**Symbols and Notes:**

N = NUMBER OF RF CHANNELS PER ANTENNA
M = NUMBER OF ANTENNAS PER GROUP
BIU = BUS INTERFACE UNIT

1/N = N-WAY POWER DIVIDER
N/1 = N-WAY POWER COMBINER

**Data Flow:**

- DATA
- TO OTHER PSPs
IMPLEMENTATION

Non-coherent AGC is applied at the antenna group receiver level. Additional
cohercent AGC is provided at the PSP level.

ADVANTAGES

• No AGC signal path is required between the PSPs and the antenna group receivers.

• Non-coherent AGC prior to BIU reduces the dynamic range which the BIU's have to
  handle.

• Coherent AGC at PSP level provides AGC function for weak signal.

DISADVANTAGES

• Complicates PSP design by requiring an AGC function within the PSP units.
AGC FUNCTION CONSIDERATIONS
TENTATIVE SUMMARY

SUMMARY (Preliminary)

• Option C which provides non-coherent AGC at the antenna receiver and coherent AGC at the PSP looks attractive from a preliminary point of view.
• Quantitative analysis has to be applied to verify the tradeoffs involved.
• Axiomatix will base this analysis of information available to us from Phase B contractors reports and on best engineering judgment.

REMAINING ISSUES

• MA receiver(s) and bus architectures are not finalized yet in detail by Phase B contractors. Thus, some assumptions on our part will have to be made.
• The interaction between the AGC function and the associated functions of power control and antenna switching must be defined in quantitative terms.
APPENDIX N

POWER CONTROL FOR SPACE STATION MULTIPLE ACCESS SYSTEM
POWER CONTROL FOR SPACE STATION
MULTIPLE ACCESS SYSTEM

Contract No. NAS-17414
Interim Report

Prepared for

NASA Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center
Houston, TX 77058

Technical Monitor: Dean Bratton

Prepared by
Sergei Udalov

Contributions by
Richard Austin

Axiomatix
9841 Airport Boulevard
Suite 912
Los Angeles, CA 90045

Axiomatix Report No. R8704-2
August 27, 1987
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>List of Figures</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Tables</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EXECUTIVE SUMMARY</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 INTRODUCTION</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.1 Received Signal Spread</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2 The Effect of Receiver Implementation on System Intermods</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.1 Wideband Ku-Band Receiver</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.2.2 Channelized Ku-Band Receiver Implementation</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3 Cable Driver Considerations</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.1 FO Cable Driver Functional Diagram Description</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.3.2 Optimizing System Gain Ahead of the FO Line Driver</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4 Power Control</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.1 Power Control for a Wideband Receiver</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2 Power Control with a Channelized Receiver and AGC</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2.1 General Consideration</td>
<td>37</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2.2 Example of a 3 dB Power Window</td>
<td>42</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2.3 Possibilities and Limitations of Wider Power Windows</td>
<td>44</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2.4 Power Control Algorithm for a Channelized Receiver</td>
<td>55</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.2.5 The SNR Estimation</td>
<td>57</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.4.3 User Power Control</td>
<td>59</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 CONCLUSIONS</td>
<td>60</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4.0 RECOMMENDATIONS</td>
<td>61</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX A</td>
<td>A-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX B</td>
<td>B-1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>APPENDIX C</td>
<td>C-1</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
LIST OF FIGURES

Figure 1  Power Control Function Scenario  2
Figure 2  Third Order Intermods for (a) Wideband Receiver and (b) Channelized Receiver  3
Figure 3  System SNR Transfer Curve as Function of FO Cable Loss (EMU and MSC-3 Power Control Window of 10 dB)  5
Figure 4  System SNR Transfer Curve as Function of FO Cable Loss (FF and OMV Power Control Window of 15 dB)  6
Figure 5  Functional Block Diagram for User Power Control  7
Figure 1-1  Power Control Functional Scenario  9
Figure 1-2  Power Received at Space Station from Various Users as Function of Range  10
Figure 2.1-1  Video Link Signal Levels and Margins as Function of Range  14
Figure 2.2.1-1  Configuration with One Wideband Receiver and FO Cable per Antenna  16
Figure 2.2.1-2  Wideband Receiver Third Order Intermodulation as Function of Input Signal  17
Figure 2.2.1-3  Channel Degradation Due to Third Order Intermodulation in the Wideband Receiver  19
Figure 2.2.2-1  Channelized AGC Equalizes Signal Levels into Cable Driver  21
Figure 2.2.2-2  Channelized Receiver Front End Third Order Intermodulation as Function of Input Signal  23
Figure 2.2.2-3  Channel Degradation Due to Third Order Intermodulation in Front End LNA as Function of Signal Input to a Channelized Receiver  24
Figure 2.3.1-1  FO Cable Driver Functional Block Diagram  27
Figure 2.3.2-1  Optical Driver Output as Function of System Gain Preceding the Driver  30
Figure 2.3.2-2  Link Degradation Due to FO Driver Optical Noise as Function of System Gain Preceding the Driver  31
Figure 2.4.1-1  Min/Max Received Power Spread for a 3 dB Window Power  34
## LIST OF TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table 2.1-1</th>
<th>Signal Level Characteristics of Ku-Band Video Return Links</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
EXECUTIVE SUMMARY

In this report various technical aspects of implementing the power control for the Space Station Multiple Access (MA) system are addressed. Particular emphasis is placed on the RF/IF processing of the Ku-Band MA signals received by the station. A fiber optic (FO) cable link is assumed to be carrying the IF signals between the boom locations of the receiver/transmitter (R/T) units and the central processing unit located in the habitat module. Capabilities and limitations of using an FO cable link as a subunit of the power control function are examined.

The motivation for the power control arises due to the following three factors: (1) the FDMA configuration of the return links, (2) the near/far problem, and (3) the dynamic range limitation of the Space Station's RF receiving and the IF distribution components. Figure 1 shows the power control function scenario.

Two receiver architectures were examined for their ability to handle the FDMA signals. These architectures are: (1) a wideband receiver proposed by the McDonnel Douglas team and (2) a channelized receiver proposed by the Rockwell International team.

The salient feature of the first approach is a single wideband downconversion of the entire return link band (300 MHz wide) to a wideband IF. Thus, each antenna of an antenna group is connected to a separate receiver which then connects to its own FO cable driver. The main advantage of this approach is the simplicity of the Ku-Band receivers. With a channelized approach a group of antenna receivers have a capability to amplify selectively the individual channels of the return link band. Although this approach is more complicated than the wideband approach it provides for a channel-dedicated AGC function within each receiver.

Figure 2 presents a side by side comparison of our estimates for the third order intermodulation behavior of the two receiver architectures. The bandwidth assumed is that of a digital video link, i.e., 25 MHz. As indicated in the figure, the origins of the third
Figure 1. Power Control Functional Scenario.
Note: All power levels are referred to the system input.

Figure 2. Third Order Intermods for (a) Wideband Receiver and (b) Channelized Receiver.
order intercepts are different for the two receiver architectures. It can also be seen from this figure that a channelized receiver can, at least in principle, accommodate a 20 dB higher level of the input signals before the internal generation of the third-order intermods. This capability is due to the channelized AGC available with a channelized receiver.

Because of the potential advantages of the channelized receiver, this configuration was adapted as a baseline for subsequent analysis to determine the power control window capabilities and limitations of the Space Station receiving system. Of particular significance was the analysis of the FO cable link capabilities.

Based on a practical model of an FO cable link, it was established that the basic limitation for the power control window is the FO cable loss which causes the degradation in the system SNR at the optical receiver. In view of this degradation, it is estimated that a power window for the high SNR users, such as EMU and MSC-3,* may be limited to 10 dB. For the lower SNR users, such as FF and OMV, the power control window of up to 15 dB appears feasible. Figures 3 and 4 show how the FO cable loss affects the system SNR transfer curve.

However, a conservative recommendation is a 6 dB ± 3 dB power control window with a channelized receiver. The "flattening" of the curve at the higher input SNR means that it is more difficult to estimate with accuracy the large SNR values which are the result of the increasing signals due to the range closure. This is based on a baseline assumption that the power control signal is developed at the coherent demodulators located at the receiving end of the FO cable link.

The possibility of using a PIN diode to control the power input to the user's transmitter, and thus control the output EIRP, was examined. It was determined that 60 dB of power control can be obtained in this manner without antenna switching. Figure 5 shows a functional block diagram for this viable concept.

* A three channel 8-PSK system.
CONDITIONS:
N = 5 (five carriers, equal power)
m = 0.5 (total mod index)
P_b = 0.00225 W (2.25 mW total average optical power at transmitter)
B = 25 MHz (system bandwidth)
RIN = -131 dB/Hz (transmitter noise)

Figure 3. System SNR Transfer Curve as Function of FO Cable Loss (EMU and MSC-3 Power Control Window of 10 dB).
CONDITIONS:

N = 5 (five carriers, equal power)

m = 0.5 (total mod index)

P_b = 0.00225 W (2.25 mW total average optical power at transmitter)

B = 25 MHz (system bandwidth)

RIN = -131 dB/Hz (transmitter noise)

Figure 4. System SNR Transfer Curve as Function of FO Cable Loss
(FF and OMV Power Control Window of 15 dB).
Figure 5. Functional Block Diagram for User Power Control.
1.0 INTRODUCTION

The subject of this report is the return link power control for the user segment of the Space Station's Ku-band multiple access (MA) system. The motivation for the power control is due to the following factors:

1. the baseline configuration for the return link(s) is the frequency division multiplexing (FDMA),
2. there is a large spread between the signal levels received by the Space Station from the users at the maximum and the minimum ranges, and
3. the limitations of the dynamic range capabilities of the Space Station's RF receiving and the IF distribution components.

Figure 1-1 illustrates a functional scenario for the Ku-band MA system's return link power control. As shown in the figure, a number of users may be transmitting to the Space Station simultaneously from different ranges. In some cases, they may be transmitting to a common antenna. In other cases, they may be transmitting to different antennas and yet their signals may be combined in either a common RF or a common IF equipment.

Figure 1-2 shows the signal power received at the Space Station from various users as a function of user range and signal modulation. From the figure it is evident that a power differences of as much as 90 dB may exist. For example, a telemetry received signal from a free flyer (FF) at 2000 km may be at about −105 dBm while a video signals received from another FF at 1 km may be at about −14 dBm.

It must be pointed out, however, that just because one signal is far above the other, it does not mean that there will be an interference to the weaker signal. A great deal depends on such factors as the return link frequency plan, adjacent channel filtering at the user transmitter and the receiver configuration at the Space Station. Of more direct concern is the near/far problem which may exist for the users within the same transmission band and serviced by the same antenna.
Figure 1.1. Power Control Functional Scenario.
The near/far problem, if not alleviated by the user power control, may lead to a performance degradation of the Space Station's receiving and signal processing equipment. This degradation may be in the form of:

(1) intermodulation products generated in such receiver elements as the front end, the down converter and the cable driver.
(2) interchannel interference in both the receiving and the signal processing equipment,
and (3) signal limiting in various element of the receiving equipment, particularly the drivers which feed either the RF/IF or the optical signal distribution cables.

The power control function can be implemented by sensing either the power levels of the received signals or their signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) and then using this information to send the power control commands to the users via the forward link. The required information can be obtained from the received signals on either an absolute basis, or a relative basis, or some combination of both. In this report we baseline a method for measuring the SNR of the received signals and using this information to implement the power control.

The degree to which the power, or more generally the EIRP, is to be controlled depends on a tolerable "power window" at the Space Station. Different criteria influence the power window in a different way. The criteria for the interchannel interference may be different from the criterion dictated by a limitation in the dynamic range of an optical cable driver. For example, a 2 or 3 dB power window may satisfy most of the criteria and thus eliminate most of the performance degraders. On the other hand, imposing on the users a power control within such narrow limits will increase the complexity of user's transmitting equipment.

In the material which follows various criteria for the power window are examined and various implementation tradeoffs are discussed.
2.0 TECHNICAL CONSIDERATIONS

2.1 Received Signal Spread

In this section we take a closer look at the significance of the signal level spread due to the near/far problem. For the purpose of discussion, we will consider primarily the video link signals and we will assume that a similar argument holds for the narrowband signals, i.e., the telemetry and the digital audio.

Table 2.1-1 summarizes the signal level characteristics of the Ku-band video return links. Of particular note in this table are the minimum signal-to-noise ratios of the different users. It must be noted that the spread in SNRs ranges from 15.6 dB (FF) to 27.8 dB (MSC-3). This represents a spread of about 12 dB. The spread of the margins, however, extends only from 4.8 dB (MSC-3) to 9.6 dB (EMU), i.e., a difference of less than 5 dB. If the margins are reduced to zero, then there is a spread in SNR of 13.2 dB.

The point that we are making here is that because of the nature of the links, it is not possible to equalize the working SNRs of these different signals. Neither is it possible to equalize the margins. This means that when a combination of signals from various users appear at the same antenna, there will be an unavoidable spread in signal levels which is not a function of range. Also, the criteria for power control may have to be different for different links because of this intrinsic difference. As a result, the power control algorithm may have to be tailored to each user.

Figure 2.1-1 shows video link signal levels and the corresponding margins as the function of the range.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>USER</th>
<th>R&lt;sub&gt;max&lt;/sub&gt; (km)</th>
<th>R&lt;sub&gt;min&lt;/sub&gt; (km)</th>
<th>P&lt;sub&gt;max&lt;/sub&gt; (dBm)</th>
<th>P&lt;sub&gt;min&lt;/sub&gt; (dBm)</th>
<th>ΔP (dB)</th>
<th>SNR (min) (dB)</th>
<th>SNR Margin (dB)</th>
<th>GA Margin (min) (dB)</th>
<th>GA Margin (dB)</th>
<th>Zero Margin Min. SNR (dB)</th>
<th>Zero Margin SNR (dB)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>FF</td>
<td>2000</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>-79.4</td>
<td>-13.6</td>
<td>66</td>
<td>15.6</td>
<td>5.8</td>
<td>46.3</td>
<td>46.3</td>
<td>9.8</td>
<td>83.8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMV</td>
<td>185</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>-75.7</td>
<td>-10.4</td>
<td>65.3</td>
<td>19.3</td>
<td>4.1</td>
<td>46.3</td>
<td>46.3</td>
<td>15.2</td>
<td>89.2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EMU</td>
<td>1</td>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>-70.2</td>
<td>-30.2</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>24.8</td>
<td>9.6</td>
<td>24.3</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSC-3</td>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.001</td>
<td>-67.2</td>
<td>-27.2</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>27.8</td>
<td>4.8</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>23.0</td>
<td>97</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Table 2.1: Signal Level Characteristics of Ku-Band Video Return Links.
Figure 2.1-1. Video Link Signal Levels and Margins as Function of Range.

- HGA = High Gain Antenna
- MGA = Medium Gain Antenna
- M = Margin Values

RECEIVED SIGNAL (AT ANTENNA OUTPUT) AT SPACE STATION - dBm

USER RANGE - km

MARGIN - dB
2.2 The Effect of Receiver Implementation on System Intermods

2.2.1 Wideband Ku-Band Receiver

Figure 2.2.1-1 shows a wideband Ku-band receiver implementation.* The salient feature of this implementation is a single wideband downconversion of the entire return link band (300 MHz wide) to a wideband IF. As shown, the output of the downconverter extends over a bandwidth of 450 to 750 MHz. Each antenna of an antenna group is connected to a separate receiver which in turn connects to its own FO cable driver.

The main advantage of this approach is the simplicity of the Ku-band receivers. Each receiver consists of a wideband (300 Mhz) bandpass filter, followed by a low noise amplifier (LNA), which in turn is followed by a wideband downconverter. The function of the bandpass filter is to restrict the signals applied to the LNA to only those within the MA return link band and to provide the image rejection. The low noise amplifier provides the gain required to maintain a low noise figure despite the downconverter loss. The output of the downconverter is then increased by a fixed gain which is tailored to provide the required input level to the cable driver.

At the other end of the FO cables, the signals are detected by FO receivers and applied to an IF switch matrix. This matrix permits any antenna to be connected to any PSP unit. Channel separation and bandpass filtering takes place in the PSP units. Thus, the intermodulation can occur at any point within the receiver/FO cable driver chain. Because there may be several signals received simultaneously by any one antenna at any time, it is important to maintain a high degree of linearity in this receiver in order to keep the IM interference at tolerable levels.

Of specific concern is the effect of the third order intercept which is due to the FO cable driver assembly. This intercept is reflected to the system input at a level of about -36 dBm. The effect is shown in Figure 2.2.1-2. In this figure all of the levels have been

* This approach is being considered by the McDonnell Douglas team.
Figure 2.2.1-1. Configuration with One Wideband Receiver and FO Cable per Antenna.

*IF switch matrix cross-connects receivers and PSSPs.
Figure 2.2.1-2. Wideband Receiver Third Order Intermodulation as Function of Input Signal.

Notes: All power levels referred to system input
normalized to a bandwidth of 25 MHz which is typical of a digital video link. From the figure it is evident that as the input signals increase above −60 dBm, the intermodulation products begin to rise above the thermal noise in the 25 MHz bandwidth.

Figure 2.2.1-3 shows the channel degradation due to the third order intermodulation as the function of the input signal level. This figure shows that to keep the degradation below 0.5 dB, the received input signal level should not exceed −59 to −60 dBm. This requirement places a rather stringent demand on the user power control.
Degradation Due to Third Order Intermodulation

FO Cable Driver Intercept = -36 dBm (referred to system input)
System Gain = 60 dB

Figure 2.2.1-3. Channel Degradation Due to Third Order Intermodulation in the Wideband Receiver.
2.2.2 Channelized Ku-Band Receiver Implementation

Figure 2.2.2-1 shows a group of antenna receivers which have a capability to amplify selectively the individual channels of the return link band. This capability is provided by implementing each antenna receiver with several parallel receivers. The number of parallel channel receivers in each antenna receiver is equal to the total number of channels in the return link band (or bands).

As shown in the figure, each antenna is connected to a wideband bandpass filter followed by an LNA. The LNA is connected to an N-way power divider. The N output ports of the divider feed N channel receivers. Each channel receiver has its own downconverter (not shown) and at least one, or possible two, IF amplifiers. Thus, the channel receivers can be tuned to the signals picked up by a particular antenna. Similarly, the return channels picked up by other antennas are applied to their respective channel receivers. The outputs of all M antenna receivers are then combined and applied to the cable driver.

The advantage of this receiver implementation is that once the received signals are separated into the individual frequency-selective channels, the levels of these signals can be controlled by AGC prior to the summation at the input to the cable driver. Such control provides two following features: (1) the levels of different received signals can be "equalized" at the input to FO cable driver and (2) the signal levels can be held at a relatively constant level despite signal increase due to range closure.

The availability of a channelized AGC prior to the FO cable driver implies that, at least in principle, the input signals can vary over a wide range of power levels, before the intermodulation becomes a problem.

---

* This approach is being considered by the Rockwell International team.
** The detailed architecture of the channel receivers is not addressed here. These receivers may be either single conversion or double conversion type.
Figure 2.2.2-1. Channelized AGC Equalizes Signal Levels into the Cable Driver.
It is important, however, that the circuitry preceding the line driver is not overloaded by the received signals prior to the frequency selective channelization. This requirement is due to the fact that the LNA and the downconverters of the channel receivers are wideband and thus have a limited dynamic range compared to the channel receivers. Consequently, the power control is still required but its function is primarily to reduce the interchannel interference due to spectrum sidelobes and to prevent intermodulation in the wideband LNA and the downconverters.

With the channelized receiver, it is reasonable to assume that the primary source of the intermodulation distortion is the LNA unit where all the channels are amplified on a broadband basis. Figure 2.2.2-2 shows the third order intermodulation level originating in the front end (LNA) portion of a channelized Ku-band receiver. Figure 2.2.2-3 shows the degradation, on a channel basis as function of the input signal level. Comparing this figure to 2.2.1-3, we can see that the channelized receiver can accommodate about 20 dB more input signal level than the wideband receiver. This means that, at least in principle, a wider power control window can be tolerated with a channelized receiver. This, of course, is based on the assumption that a channelized power level equalization takes place ahead of the FO line driver.

The disadvantage of the channelized approach is the relative complexity of the antenna receivers. This disadvantage may be offset by the intrinsic component redundancy provided by the availability of several channel receivers within each antenna receiver. Thus, if one channel receiver fails, another may be used in its place.

Although a noncoherent AGC is shown in Figure 2.2.2-1 for the purpose of functional clarity, such AGC may not necessarily be the final choice, and a coherent AGC may be called for this application.
Note: All power levels are referred to system input.

LNA Gain = 28 dB

N_{TH} = -95 \text{ dBm} \\
(BW = 25 \text{ MHz})

Figure 2.2.2-2. Channelized Receiver Front End Third Order Intermodulation as Function of Input Signal.
Degradation Due to
Third Order Intermodulation

LNA I3 Point = -8 dBm (Referred to system input)
LNA Gain = 28 dB

Figure 2.2.2-3. Channel Degradation Due to Third Order Intermodulation in Front End LNA as Function of Signal Input to a Channelized Receiver.
2.3 Cable Driver Considerations

The dynamic range of signals applied to either an RF/IF or a FO cable driver is among the factors, which must be taken into account when specifying the degree of power control. The specific effects to consider in this case are the intermodulation products and a limited dynamic range of practical cable drivers. However, as explained in the preceding sections, the architecture of the Ku-band receiver ahead of the cable driver influences to a great degree the interaction between the capabilities of the driver and the power control requirement. For example, if channel separation is provided prior to the cable driver, then such means as AGC can be used to equalize the levels of different channels at the input to the driver. With the spread in signal levels reduced in this manner, the requirements for the power control can be relaxed somewhat without seriously impacting the performance of the cable driver unit.

In this report we are baselining an FO cable driver such as General Optronics Corp. Model GO DIP 1000 or equivalent. Presented below are the factors which determine the tradeoffs between the drivers capability and the power control requirements.
2.3.1 FO Cable Driver Functional Diagram Description

Figure 2.3.1-1 shows a functional diagram of an FO cable driver. We constructed this diagram based on the information available to us from the data sheets on the GO DIP 1000 laser module. As shown in the figure, an RF/IF amplifier supplies RF power to an RF to optical power converter which in this case is an injection laser diode. The laser diode is biased into the conduction region by the bias current. In the absence of the RF modulation, the laser diode emits an optical power which is proportional to the bias current. When the RF power developed by the driver amplifier is applied to the laser diode, the bias current following through the diode is amplitude-modulated at the RF/IF rate. This results in an intensity modulation which is propagated along the FO cable and is detected at the other end by an appropriate photo-detector. The optical limitations of the FO cable driver shown arise from the following:

(1) Third order intermodulation
(2) Maximum power clipping
(3) Optical noise.

In addition to these optical limitations, there is a limitation contributed by the 3rd order intermodulation generated in the RF driver amplifier.

The optical limitations are functions of the bias current. If the bias current is increased, the allowable optical modulation is reduced, but the optical noise is also reduced, which is a desirable factor. Also, when the allowable modulation is decreased, the maximum clipping can be reached with a smaller RF signal, a result which is undesirable from the standpoint of obtaining a maximum dynamic range out of the optical power converter (i.e., laser diode). Thus, finding an optimum operating print for a laser diode becomes an important consideration.

Furthermore, the intermodulation contributed by the driver amplifier is an important factor. In most cases it is this intermodulation which limits to the dynamic range of an FO driver. For example, if the third order intercept of the driver amplifier is at 24 dBm and the
Figure 2.3.1-1. FO Cable Driver Functional Block Diagram.
system gain, including the gain of the driver amplifier, is about 60 dB, this third order intercept is reflected to the system input as a –36 dBm intercept. Consequently, it becomes evident that such factors as laser diode bias current and the system gain are some of the parameters which have to be optimized before the actual capabilities of an FO line driver are established.
2.3.2 Optimizing System Gain Ahead of the FO Line Driver

Figure 2.3.2-1 shows the optical driver output as the function of the system gain preceding the optical driver. As is shown in the figure, there is a certain fixed level of the optical noise which is delivered by the optical driver to the optical cable. This level (-51 dBm) is based on the optical noise density of -125 dBm/Hz in a 25 MHz bandwidth. This noise is the relative intensity noise (RIN) and is a function of the laser diode.

On the upper end, the maximum modulated signal out of the optical element is limited at about -2.7 dBm which corresponds to 50% modulation with respect to the 3mw peak unmodulated output of the laser diode. The maximum modulated signal is the function of the bias current, which in this case is assumed to be set to allow for 50% optical modulation.

For low values of system gain, the desired signals are degraded by the optical noise (i.e., RIN) of the laser diode. As the system gain is increased, the received signals and the thermal noise are amplified until the thermal noise exceeds the RIN. At about 60 dB of system gain, the degradation due to the RIN is only 0.1 dB. From this point on any additional gain reduces the dynamic range of the optical driver.

Thus, from Figure 2.3.2-1, it is evident that the dynamic range of the optical driver can be traded off for some degradation in the link margin. This degradation would come from operating the system at some lower gain, say 50 dB, where the degradation due to the contribution from the RIN is about 1 dB. At system gain below 40 dB, the margin degradation increased inversely proportional to system gain as the received signals get buried in the RIN. This is shown in Figure 2.3.2-2.

The SNR of the received signal must be also considered when determining the system gain. As shown in the figure, the SNR of 15.6 dB (FF) can be handled by a gain of about 76 dB while that of 27.8 dB (MSC-3) needs a reduced gain of about 64 dB to avoid clipping. But, as has been said earlier, there is a need to increase the system gain above the point at which the optical noise contribution is negligible. Thus, the discussions that follow will assume a baseline minimum value of system gain of about 60 dB.
Figure 2.3.2-1. Optical Driver Output as Function of System Gain Preceding the Driver.
Link Degradation Due to FO Driver Optical Noise dB

Thermal Noise = -95 dBm (25 MHz Bw)
Optical Noise = -51 dBm (25 MHz Bw)

Figure 2.3.2-2. Link Degradation Due to FO Driver Optical Noise (RIN) as Function of System Gain Preceding the Driver.
2.4 Power Control

In this section we explore the various aspects of the power control. Specifically, we consider how the receiver implementation at the Space Station impacts the power control "window".

2.4.1 Power Control for a Wideband Receiver

In this section we will consider a baseline power control window for a wideband receiver such as shown in Figure 2.2.1-1. We will consider the effect of a particular power control window on the operation of the FO cable driver as it is influenced by the wideband nature of the receiver preceding the driver.

As shown in Figure 2.2.1-1, each wideband receiver is dedicated to a single antenna and it feeds a single cable driver. Thus, only the signals picked up by a particular antenna are applied to a related FO cable driver. However, an antenna may be receiving signals from different users at different ranges. For example, signals from OMV and FF may be picked up by the same high gain (46.3 dB) antenna at their extreme ranges. Thus, they will appear together at the output of the same FO line driver. Also, signals from an MSC-3 and an EMU may be picked up by the same hemi antenna. This may happen when the reception from an EMU is switched from the medium gain (24.3 dB) antenna to the reception by a hemi (3 dB) to permit a close-in operation. If this switch-over occurs at a range of about 60 meters, the margin for the reception from the EMU will be about the same as the margin for the reception at 1 km.

At this point let us baseline a 3 dB power control window and determine what effect this window has on the system operation. First, we must consider the third order intermodulation intercept referenced to the system input. As shown in Figure 2.2.1-2, this intercept is at -36 dBm, and the performance degradation resulting from this intercept is shown in Figure 2.2.1-3. From that figure we conclude that to keep the performance degradation at less than 0.5 dB the input signals should not exceed about -59 dBm.
Figure 2.4.1-1 shows the effect of a 3 dB power control on the video links received from the FF, OMV, EMU and MSC-3. As can be seen from this figure, the power control keeps all signals below the −59 dBm level with a margin of about 5 dB. Thus, there are no significant intermods due to the RF/IF circuitry of the wideband receiver. The signal level spread is 15.2 dB between the minimum (FF at 2000 km) and the maximum (MSC-3 at 1 meter) signals. This corresponds to the existing link budget spread in SNRs of these different users, i.e., 12.2 dB plus the power control window of 3 dB.

Figure 2.4.1-2 shows the four received signals as they may appear at the output of the FO cable driver. In this figure all of the signals pertaining to the output of the cable driver have been referred to the system input by subtracting 60.5 dB of the system gain.* Thus, the +4.8 dBm (3 mw) value of the peak modulated optical power appears as −55.7 dBm in Figure 2.4.1-2. Other output-referenced signals are also reduced accordingly. Both the thermal and the optical noise are based on a channel equivalent noise bandwidth of 25 MHz (i.e., 74 dB-Hz).

From Figure 2.4.1-2, it is evident that even with a relatively narrow power control window of 3 dB, there is not much operating margin at the output of the optical cable driver. This is due to the fact that the SNRs of the four signals differ by about 12 dB in the 25 MHz bandwidth.

Of particular concern is the fact that the maximum signal of the MSC-3 is only one dB away from the level of the maximum signal modulation. This means that any drift in gain in the portion of the receiver which precedes the optical driver may drive the MSC-3 signal into limiting along with the other signals which may be present at the same antenna output. In fact, the RMS addition of the highest MSC-3 signal (−64.2 dBm) and the highest EMU signal (−67.2 dBm) will make the combined signal exceed the −63.2 dBm at this system gain the degradation due to the optical noise does not exceed 0.1 dB.
Figure 2.4.1-1. Min/Max Received Power Spread for a 3 dB Window Power Control
Figure 2.4.1-2. Optical Cable Driver Output Levels for 3 dB Window Power Control (Wideband Receiver).
threshold by about 0.5 dB. And this does not even include the secondary effect of adding other lower level signals.

One of the solutions to this problem is to narrow the power control window to 2 dB or less. However, in view of the added complexity to the power control function necessitated by such a "tight" window this approach does not look attractive, particularly within the user segment. Instead, one may consider operating the system with a reduced margin by lowering the gain prior to the optical driver. The margin degradation in this case will then be due the increased level of RIN relative to the system thermal noise. Another alternative would be to lower the bias on the FO driver and thus allow more modulation range on the cable driver.

Perhaps the most technically workable alternative, although a more expensive one, may be to increase the power handling capability of the laser diode used for the FO cable driver. The trade-offs in this area are, however, beyond the scope of this report.
2.4.2 Power Control with a Channelized Receiver and AGC

2.4.2.1 General Consideration

As was explained in Section 2.2.2, the advantage of a channelized receiver is that the received signals can be separated (i.e., bandpass filtered) according to their channel frequencies prior to being applied to an FO cable driver. Such separation permits AGC to be applied to the individual channels to achieve some degree of signal level equalization at the input to the FO cable driver. In this section we consider various aspects of the interaction between the power control requirement and the channelized AGC function. For the purpose of comparison with the broadband receiver, it is initially assumed here that a 3 dB power control window is implemented. The effect of using wider power windows is then considered in view of the AGC capability inherent with a channelized receiver approach.

Before considering quantitatively a specific situation, the effect of the channelized AGC prior to the FO cable driver needs to be discussed. Figure 2.4.2.1-1 shows, in a qualitative way, the effect of a channelized AGC on the signal and noise levels at the output of the FO cable driver. As shown in that figure, the dynamic range of the FO cable driver is limited at the upper end (2) by the maximum signal modulation (MSM) level and at the lower end by the optical noise (6).

Consider first what happens to the signal (1) when the input signal increases due to a decrease in range. At the initial acquisition, the signal will be at an SNR determined by the thermal noise. Without the AGC the signal will increase due to a closer range as shown by the dotted line (1) until it reaches the maximum signal modulation level (2). At this point the clipping will occur in the optical transmitter and the signal will be distorted. The level of the thermal noise, however, will remain at a constant level (4) regardless of the increase in the signal level.

When the AGC is activated, the signal will be kept at a nearly constant level (3) despite an increase in signal strength. At the same time the AGC action will, due to the...
Figure 2.4.2.1-1. Effect of Channelized AGC on Relative Signal and Noise Levels at the Output of FO Cable Driver.
reduction in gain, lower the level of the thermal noise reaching the FO cable driver. This is shown by (5). At some point, however, the front end thermal noise will be at the same level as the optical noise, and thus both noises will be contributing to the total noise at the output of the FO cable driver. As the signal strength continues to increase further, the AGC action will push the thermal noise below the level of the optical noise. Beyond this point the output signal-to-noise ratio will remain constant and it will be limited by the optical noise.

Figure 2.4.2.1-2 shows FO cable driver output SNR vs. system input thermal SNR. The curves presented there demonstrate the effect of the AGC upon pushing the thermal noise below the optical noise. In this case the optical output noise consists of both the random noise and of third-order intermods due to the optical driver per se, i.e., exclusive of the RF/IF driver amplifier circuitry. The initial ratio of the thermal to the combined optical noise is 14 dB for the assumed model of the cable driver.

The curves show different behavior as the function of the AGC threshold above the thermal noise. The important common feature of the three curves shown is the leveling off of the output SNR as function of the increasing input SNR. Curve (1) is for the AGC threshold set at 26.7 dB above their thermal noise. This AGC setting keeps the maximum level of any signal at a level 6 dB below the peak optical modulation level of -2.7 dBm. Curve (2) corresponds to an AGC threshold of 19.3 dB which is the minimum SNR for the OMV signal. Curve (3) corresponds to a threshold setting of 10 dB and its purpose is to provide additional information on the behavior of the output SNR.

From Figure 2.4.2.1-2, it is evident that the output SNR ratios level off at their respective asymptotes which are equal to the respective AGC threshold setting plus 14 dB. The effective degradation in the output SNR w/r to the input SNR is also represented by a set of respective curves. Although not necessary detrimental to the link margins, the leveling of the output SNR curves presents a limitation on the accuracy with which the output SNR can be measured. Specifically, if the AGC threshold is located beyond the FO
driver, the leveling reduces the accuracy with which the power control decision can be made. We will address this subject in more detail elsewhere.
Notes: Combined optical noise and optical intermods level is 14 dB below system thermal noise.

*Operating Curve for data in Figure 2.4.2.2-1

Figure 2.4.2.1-2. FO Cable Driver Output SNR vs. System Input Thermal Noise SNR.
2.4.2.2 Example of a 3 dB Power Window

Figure 2.4.2.2-1 illustrates the effect of a 3 dB power control window on the FO line driver output. This figure is similar to Figure 2.4.1-2 except that all signal levels are referenced to the FO cable driver output instead of the system input.

For the example shown in Figure 2.4.2.2-1, it is assumed that the AGC threshold is set at a level equal to the signal received from an OMV. In other words, the AGC action prevents all other signals from exceeding the nominal level of an OMV signal. As shown in the figure, this level is 12.5 dB below the maximum signal modulation level (-2.7 dBm) of the FO driver. The absolute level of this AGC threshold is -15.2 dBm.

From Figure 2.4.2.2-1, the following can be observed:

1. Signals from an FF are below the AGC threshold level and, therefore, they are not affected by the AGC action.

2. Maximum signals from an OMV remain at the level of the AGC threshold. However, as the received OMV signal increases within a 3 dB power window the AGC reduces the channel gain accordingly. This pushes the thermal noise down by 3 dB.

3. Maximum signals from an EMU and the MSC-3 are affected by the AGC even outside of the power control range. Specifically, this means that the AGC reduces the channel gain for these signals even at their nominal link budget values. AGC then provides further gain reduction as these signals increase within their respective 3 dB power windows. Furthermore, because the MSC-3 and the EMU signals have relatively high initial SNRs the AGC action forces the thermal noise levels closer to the optical noise, thus degrading the margins of these signals by 0.8 and 0.2 dB, respectively.

The scenario represented by Figure 2.4.2.2-1 is conservative from the standpoint of providing 12.5 dB of margin between the AGC threshold and the maximum signal modulation level (-2.7 dBm) of the FO driver. In an actual situation the 12.5 dB margin can probably be reduced to 10 dB or perhaps even to lower value. The actual margin value will depend on the number of simultaneous signals handled by the FO cable driver and on the relative magnitudes of these signals.
Figure 2.4.2.2-1. Optical Driver Output Levels for 3 dB Power Control Window (channelized received with AGC).
2.4.2.3 Possibilities and Limitations of Wider Power Windows

In the preceding section, a 3 dB power window was assumed and the effect of such power window on a channelized receiver was considered. It was shown that with the AGC threshold set at 12.5 dB below the MSM level the FF and the OMV signals can be received without any margin degradation. It was also shown that the EMU and the MSC-3 signals can be received with 0.8 dB and 0.2 dB margin degradation, respectively.

A power window wider than 3 dB can alleviate the power control requirements imposed on the user. It can also loosen the tolerances required of the AGC at the Space Station end of the link. Thus, the channelized architecture of the receiver and the availability of a channelized AGC naturally raise a question of whether a power window wider than 3 dB can be specified for this case.

Providing for an operation with a wide power window can be obtained by a combination of the two following conditions:

(1) moving the AGC threshold level closer to the MSM level

and

(2) allowing the AGC action to move the thermal noise level closer to the level of the optical noise.

Neither one of these conditions, however, can be realized without paying a penalty. Raising the AGC threshold level may result in amplitude clipping, particularly with multiple signals being applied to the FO cable driver. On the other hand, allowing more gain reduction with the AGC decreases system output signal-to-noise ratio due to a higher level of the optical noise. Consequently, a wider power window must be a compromise between these two limitations.

In considering the possibilities of using wider power control windows, we must also take closer look at the effect of the FO cable loss on the system output SNR. Depending on the magnitude of the FO cable loss various noise sources play the predominant roles.
As shown in Figure 2.4.2.3-1, there are three basic sources of the optical noise. One source is at the transmitter and two are at the receiver. At the transmitter the source is due to the relative intensity noise (RIN). RIN is inversely proportional to the cube of the transmitted power. However, once a given optical transmitted power is selected, RIN does not affect the $C/N_0$ at the receiving end of the link. This noise was already mentioned in Section 2.3.2.

The noise sources which do affect the $C/N_0$ value at the receiver are the quantum noise and the thermal noise of the receiving device. The quantum noise degrades the receive $C/N_0$ ratio at the rate of 1 dB/1 dB of received power reduction, but the thermal noise provides a corresponding $C/N_0$ reduction at the rate of 2 dB/1 dB. The role which these noise sources play in degrading the $C/N_0$ ratio depends on the level of the optical signal impinging on the optical receiver.

Figure 2.4.2.3-2 shows a typical behavior of the $C/N_0$ ratio for an optical link as the function of the received optical power (References [1] and [2]). As shown in this figure, for the received power levels in the 0 to -10 dBm, the RIN dominates the $C/N_0$ ratio. In the region extending from -10 dBm to -20 dBm, the quantum noise determines the received $C/N_0$. Below -20 dBm the optical receiver's thermal noise determines the performance of an FO link. Thus, depending on the transmitted optical power and the FO cable loss different noise sources determine the system performance.

It must be pointed out that the trend shown in Figure 2.4.2.3-2 is only a generalized trend, and that for each particular link, an analysis has to be performed to determine the actual performance. Based on the data obtained from the manufacturers of the optical and FO equipment, we have performed an analysis using a specific model of our link. Appendix A contains this analysis. Based on this analysis we have determined that at the maximum estimated FO cable loss of about 20 dB, the receiver thermal noise will dominate the link performance, but that at losses of 15 dB or less, the link performance will be dominated by RIN.
Figure 2.4.2.3-1. FO Cable Link Noise Sources.
Figure 2.4.2.3-2. Carrier/Noise versus Received Optical Power.
Figure 2.4.2.3-3 shows the system SNR transfer curve as a function of the FO cable loss. From this curve we can see that for the maximum loss of 20 dB the "flattening" occurs at output SNR of about 35 dB. This, however, appears to be sufficient to receive the MSC-3 and the EMU signals with some link margins. It also appears that on top of this a 10 dB power control window may be implemented with some reasonable degree of accuracy for these high SNR users.

Figure 2.4.2.3-4 shows the same system SNR transfer curve in conjunction with the low SNR users such as an FF and an OMV. From this figure it is evident that for these low SNR users a power control window of up to 15 dB can be implemented with a reasonable accuracy and for the maximum cable loss of 20 dB. Also, these users are accommodated with some margin by the FO link.

Consider now some of the limitations which may arise as the result of striving for wide power control windows. These limitations are particularly pronounced for the high SNR users such as the EMU and the MSC-3. From Figure 2.4.2.3-3 it evident that a 10 dB increase in the received power moves the output SNR curve into a relatively flat, compressed region. Also, it can be seen that the flatness of the SNR curve is more pronounced for the case of the maximum FO cable loss of 20 dB. Thus, as the cable loss increases with time from say 10 dB to 20 dB a power increase of 10 dB at the system input will be detected as an increase in output SNR of only 5.9 dB instead of 9 dB. This fact is illustrated in Figure 2.4.2.3-5. As shown there, the SNR threshold Th(10) set at a level when the cable loss is 10 dB will not be exceed when the cable loss increases with time.

To alleviate this problem the algorithm for the power control must include provisions for compensating for such variation. The data for the compensation can be derived from an AGC amplifier placed after the photo diode at the receiver end of the FO link. The purpose for this amplifier is strictly to compensate for the gradual losses in the FO cable. Thus, this amplifier is not to be confused with other AGC amplifiers which form the conventional (i.e., the RF and the IF) portions of each Ku-Band channel receiver.
**CONDITIONS:**

- \( N = 5 \) (five carriers, equal power)
- \( m = 0.5 \) (total mod index)
- \( R_0 = 0.5 \text{ A/W} \) (pin diode receptivity)
- \( P_b = 0.00225 \text{ W} \) (2.25 mW total average optical power at transmitter)
- \( B = 25 \text{ MHz} \) (system bandwidth)
- \( T = 290^\circ \text{k} \) (optical receiver)
- \( R_{eq} = 1 \text{ k}\Omega \) (transimpedance amplifier)
- \( F_t = 2 \) (NF = 3 dB) (optical receiver)
- \( \text{RIN} = -131 \text{ dB/Hz} \) (transmitter noise)
- \( I_d = \text{negligible} \) (dark current)

---

**Figure 2.4.2.3-3.** System SNR Transfer Curve as Function of FO Cable Loss (EMU and MSC-3 Power Control Window of 10 dB).
CONDITIONS:
N = 5 (five carriers, equal power)
m = 0.5 (total mod index)
R_0 = 0.5 A/W (pin diode receptivity)
P_b = 0.00225 W (2.25 mW total average optical power at transmitter)
B = 25 MHz (system bandwidth)
T = 290°k (optical receiver)
R_eq = 1 kΩ (transimpedance amplifier)
F_t = 2 (NF = 3 dB) (optical receiver)
RIN = -131 dB/Hz (transmitter noise)
I_d = negligible (dark current)

Figure 2.4.3-4. System SNR Transfer Curve as Function of FO Cable Loss
(FF and OMV Power Control Window of 15 dB).
Figure 2.4.2.3-5. Effect of FO Cable Loss on Power Control Decision (MSC-3 User).
Another significant issue encountered with large power control windows arises due to finite tolerances on the power control decision threshold. This is illustrated in Figure 2.4.2.3-6. As shown there, the normal operating point for an MSC-3 user output SNR of 27.0 dB. The corresponding margin at this SNR is 4 dB. As the signal power increases, the decision to command a 10 dB power reduction may occur at either a 6 dB power increase or at a 10 dB power increase depending on whether the threshold has moved by −2 dB or has remained at its proper value. If the decision is at the correct value, the power reduction will bring the link to its original operating point, i.e., SNR (in) = 27.8 dB and SNR (out) = 27 dB. If, however, the decision is made at the Th(−2 dB) point then the link is brought back to a much lower operating point which is still within the margin region but is dangerously close to the lower end of the margin zone.

The situation is worse if the power control window for the MSC-3 is 15 dB. Figure 2.4.2.3-7 illustrates this point. Here we see that if the decision is made at the Th(−2 dB) point, the power control command may force the link to operate below the margin.

Based on the examples presented, one can, therefore, conclude that power control windows over 10 dB should be used with caution for the high SNR users which operate in the "flattened" portion of the output SNR curve. This, however, does not preclude the lower SNR users (see Figure 2.4.2.3-4) from utilizing 15 dB windows provided that the decision threshold tolerances are set properly.
User: MSC-3
FO Cable Loss = 20 dB
Power Window = 10 dB

Figure 2.4.2.3-6. A Loose Power Control Decision Tolerance May Push Control into the Margin Region
User: MSC-3
FO Cable Loss = 20 dB
Power Window = 10 dB

Figure 2.4.2.3-7. Excessive Power Window is Vulnerable to Decision Tolerance.
2.4.2.4 Power Control Algorithm for a Channelized Receiver

The proposed algorithm for the power control is based on the measurement of the output signal-to-noise ratio (SNR) of the controlled channel. Such measurement does not depend on the absolute signal level and thus it is less sensitive to the residual inaccuracies of the AGC.

Figure 2.4.2.4-1 shows a flow chart for implementing such algorithm for a channelized receiver. As shown in the figure, the first step is to decode the user's ID, i.e., FF, OMV, EMU, etc. The user ID permits the algorithm program to look up such user-related parameters as the SNR(min), the margin and the power control (PC) window. This data may be stored in an EPROM to permit changes in the user-related parameters. The assigned user PC threshold, i.e., the value of the SNR(out) at which the power control is activated is also obtained from the EPROM. Based on the measured FO cable loss the PC threshold is adjusted accordingly as described in Section 2.4.2.3.

The steps described above should take place prior to the actual user acquisition by the Space Station. After these steps are completed, the PC program awaits the carrier lock flag.

Once the carrier lock flag is received, the program begins to test the link SNR of the received signal. The test is based on comparing the pertinent signals at the output of the link demodulator. If the SNR falls below the SNR(min) value, the program alerts the antenna switching algorithm. But, if the SNR is within the acceptable limits, the program continues to measure the link SNR.

When the link SNR exceeds the preset PC threshold, i.e., the SNR becomes high, a command is sent to the user to reduce the power level by the appropriate power window. The program then returns to the testing for the carrier flag.
Figure 2.4.2.4-1. Power Control Algorithm for a Channelized Receiver.
2.4.2.5 The SNR Estimation

Figure 2.4.2.5-1 shows a circuit for deriving the signals for the estimation of the channel SNR. The particular circuit shown is for a QPSK Costas loop, but a similar technique can be applied to higher order modulations such as 8-PSK. As shown, the actual measurement performed is that of (S+N)/N which is a close approximation to S/N for large values of SNR.

The (S+N)/N component is derived by averaging the absolute values of the a(t) and b(t) data streams. The estimate of the N-component is obtained by taking the RMS value of the link noise in the carrier error track channel. The bandwidth of the latter channel is approximately equal to the bandwidth of the "sidearm" lowpass (LPF) filters. Furthermore, the highpass filtering eliminates the carrier tracking error component from the N-term. The SNR estimation can be performed by digital signal processing circuitry after quantizing the S+N and N signals to the required degree of accuracy.
Figure 2.4.2.5-1. QPSK Costas Loop Signals for SNR Estimation.
2.4.3 User Power Control

The commands sent to the user can alter user's EIRP by either reducing the transmitter power, or the antenna gain or both. The simplest method is to control the transmitter power over a wide range of levels.

The power amplifier baselined for the MA Ku-Band system users may be a 1 watt cw solid state amplifier. The power output of such amplifier may be controlled by varying the RF input drive by means of a PIN diode. As shown in Appendix C, the input power, and hence the transmitter output of the user, can be controlled over a range of 60 dB by means of a PIN diode. Appendix C contains the support material for defining the user transmitter configuration.
3.0 CONCLUSIONS

In this report we have examined various aspects of establishing the requirements and the limitations for the power control for the Space Station Multiple Access System Users. Particular emphasis was placed on the performance of the fiber optic (FO) cable link which is currently baselined for connecting the Ku-Band receiver/transmitter units with the modem/processing equipment. Two receiver architectures were examined. These are: (1) a wideband receiver and (2) a channelized receiver. It was determined that a channelized receiver can, at least in principle, accommodate a 20 dB higher level of the input signals before the internal generation of the third-order intermodulation products. This capability is due to the channelized AGC available with the channelized receiver. Thus, we have assumed a channelized receiver as a desirable baseline for our system model.

It was also determined that, based on practical model of an FO cable link, the basic limitation for the power control window is the FO cable loss which causes the degradation in the system SNR at the optical receiver. In view of this degradation, it is estimated that a power window for the high SNR users, such as EMU and MSC-3, may be limited to 10 dB, at best. For the lower SNR users, such as FF and OMV, the power control window of up to 15 dB appears feasible. A prudent approach, however, is to set a 6 dB power control window as a design goal and allow a ±3 dB tolerance.

The possibility of using a PIN diode to control the power input to the user's transmitter, and thus control the output power, was also examined. It was determined that 60 dB of power control can be obtained in this manner without antenna switching.
4.0 RECOMMENDATIONS

Based on the findings reported in this document, it appears that a channelized receiver system with channelized AGC can provide significant advantages over a wideband receiver which amplifies all of the received signals by means of a single IF. Thus, a channelized receiver is recommended.

To allow for implementation tolerances, it is recommended that a power control window be kept below 10 dB, although some users can work with wider windows. A conservative baseline is 6 dB ± 3 dB window. Because the SNR performance of the FO cable link is limited by the optical receiver sensitivity when large (= 20 dB) FO cable losses are encountered a low noise optical receiver design is recommended. The receiver model used in this report is based on a PIN optical diode and a transimpedance amplifier. It is suggested that the use of an avalanche photo-diode (APD) receiver be investigated during the design phases of the MA link system. The use of an APD receiver may improve the noise performance at the receiving end of an optical FO cable link.
APPENDIX A

FIBER OPTIC CABLE LINK PERFORMANCE ESTIMATE
APPENDIX A
FIBER OPTIC CABLE LINK PERFORMANCE ESTIMATES

1.0 INTRODUCTION

In this appendix we provide a quantitative estimate of the FO cable link performance. The particular emphasis is placed on determining the effect of the noise sources which affect the performance of the link.

As shown in Figure A-1, there are three basic sources of the optical noise. One source is at the transmitter and two are at the receiver. At the transmitter the source is due to the relative intensity noise (RIN). RIN is inversely proportional to the cube of the transmitted power. However, once a given optical transmitted power is selected, RIN does not change at the receiving end of the link.

The noise sources which do affect the C/N₀ value at the receiver are the quantum noise and the thermal noise of the receiving device. The quantum noise degrades the receive C/N₀ ratio at the rate of 1 dB/1 dB of the received power reduction, but the thermal noise provides a corresponding C/N₀ reduction at the rate of 2 dB/1 dB. The role which these noise sources play in degrading the C/N₀ ratio depends on the level of the optical signal impinging on the optical receiver.

Figure A-2 shows a typical behavior of the C/N₀ ratio for an optical link as the function of the received optical power (References [1] and [2]). As shown in this figure, for the received power levels in the 0 to -10 dBm, the RIN dominates the C/N₀ ratio. In the region extending from -10 dBm to -20 dBm, the quantum noise determines the received C/N₀. Below -20 dBm the optical receiver's thermal noise determines the performance of an FO link. Thus, depending on the transmitted optical power and the FO cable loss different noise sources determine the system performance.
Figure A.1. FO Cable Link Noise Sources.

*General Optoelectronics Corp. GO DIP 1000 Laser Module and/or GO ANA Laser Diode Transmitter are baseline for our analysis.
Figure A-2. Carrier/Noise versus Received Optical Power.
The trend shown in Figure A-2 is only a generalized trend. To obtain a more accurate estimate of the performance of our link, we have to make some reasonable quantitative assumptions and perform the required calculations.

For the calculations that follow, we assume that a General Optronics Corp. GO DIP 1000 laser module is used at the transmitting end of the link. This module may be incorporated into the GO ANA analog laser diode transmitter. We also assume that the laser diode, which is rated at 3 mw cw power, is biased at 2.25 mw (i.e. \( P_b = 2.25 \) mw) and that the total modulation index is 50% for a 5-channel link. We also assume a PIN diode and a transimpedance amplifier with an equivalent resistance of \( 1k\Omega (R_{eq} = 1k\Omega) \) and a noise figure of 3 dB (\( F_t = 2 \)) is used at the receiving end.

Appendix B contains the data sheets on the General Optronics Corp. laser transmitter units.
CALCULATIONS

The C/N₀ value at the receiving end of an FO cable link can be expressed by the following equation [1]:

\[
\frac{C}{N_0} = \left(\frac{1}{2N}\right) \frac{(mR_0P_b)^2}{(RIN R_0^2 P_b^2 B) + 2q(R_0 P_b + I_d)B + (4KTB/R_{eq})F_t}
\]

where

- \(N\) = number of independent channels
- \(R_0\) = diode responsibility (amperes/watt)
- \(m\) = modulation depth (total, all carriers)
- \(P_b\) = average optical power received (w)
- \(q\) = electron charge (1.6 x 10⁻¹⁹ coulombs)
- \(K\) = Boltzmann constant (138 x 10⁻²³ watt-sec/°K)
- \(I_d\) = diode dark current (amperes)
- \(B\) = bandwidth of receiver (Hz)
- \(T\) = temperature (°K)
- \(R_{eq}\) = equivalent resistance of photodiode load and amplifier (ohms)
- \(F_t\) = noise factor of preamplifier
- \(RIN\) = source relative intensity noise (dB/Hz in numeric value)

The three terms in the denominator of equation A-1 identify the aforementioned contributions of the source, the quantum and the receiver noise terms. If we let \(B = 1\) Hz and neglect the effect of the diode dark current (i.e., let \(I_d = 0\) amp) we can separate equation A-1 into three separate C/N₀ terms as shown below:

**Source Noise:**

\[
C/N_0 = \frac{1}{2N} \frac{m^2}{RIN}
\]

\[(A-2)\]
Quantum Noise:

\[ C/N_0 = \frac{1}{2N} (m^2) \left( \frac{R_0 P_b}{2q} \right) \quad (A-3) \]

Receiver Noise:

\[ C/N_0 = \frac{1}{2N} (m^2) \left( \frac{R_0 P_b}{4KT} \right) \frac{R_{eq}}{F_t} \quad (A-4) \]

For our baseline model we assume the following values:

- \( N = 5 \) (five channels)
- \( m = 0.5 \) (total for five channels)
- \( RIN = -131 \text{ dB/Hz} \) (7.94 \times 10^{-14} numeric)
- \( R_0 = 0.5 \text{ A/w} \)
- \( P_b = 0.00225 \text{ w} \) (2.25 mw at transmitter)
- \( T = 290^\circ \text{K} \)
- \( R_{eq} = 1\text{K}\Omega \)
- \( F_t = 2 \) (NF = 3 dB)
- \( I_d = \) negligible

Using these values we proceed to calculate the various \( C/N_0 \) terms.

Source Noise \( C/N_0 \):

\[ C/N_0 = \frac{1}{(2)(5)} \times (0.5)^2 \times \frac{1}{7.97 \times 10^{-14}} = \frac{0.25}{10 \times 7.94 \times 10^{-14}} = 3.147 \times 10^{11} \text{ or 115 dB/Hz} \]

Quantum Noise \( C/N_0 \):

\( q = 1.6 \times 10^{-19} \text{ coulombs} \)

\[ C/N_0 = \frac{1}{(2)(5)} \times (0.5)^2 \times \frac{(0.5)(0.00225)}{(2)(1.6) \times 10^{-19}} = \frac{2.81 \times 10^{-4}}{(10)(3.2) \times 10^{-19}} = 8.19 \times 10^{1} \text{ or 139.4 dB/Hz} \]
The value above is for no cable loss. For a 20 dB loss the \( \text{C/N}_0 \) value becomes:

\[
\text{C/N}_0 (L = 20 \text{ dB}) = 139.4 \text{ dB/Hz} - 20 \text{ dB} = 119.4 \text{ dB/Hz}.
\]

**Receiver Noise \( \text{C/N}_0 \):**

Assume

\[
\begin{align*}
R_{eq} &= 1000 \Omega \\
T &= 290^\circ \text{K} \\
K &= 138 \times 10^{-23} \text{ watt-sec/}^\circ \text{K} \\
(KT &= 4 \times 10^{-21}) \\
F &= 2 (\text{NF} = 3 \text{ dB})
\end{align*}
\]

Then for zero cable loss (i.e., \( L = 0 \text{ dB} \)):

\[
\text{C/N}_0 = \frac{1}{2N} (m^2) \frac{(R_0 R_b)^2}{4 K T F R_{eq}}
\]

\[
= \frac{1}{(2)(5)} (0.5)^2 (0.5)^2 (2.25 \times 10^{-3})^2 \times 10^3 \\
= (0.25)(0.25)(5.1)(10^{-6}) 10^3 \\
= (10)(4)(2)(4 \times 10^{-21})
\]

\[
= 9.96 \times 10^{14} \text{ or } 150 \text{ dB/Hz}
\]

For \( L = 20 \text{ dB} \) this value will decrease by 40 dB:

\[
\text{C/N}_0 = (L = 40 \text{ dB}) = 150 \text{ dB/Hz} - (2 \times 20 \text{ dB}) = 110 \text{ dB/Hz}
\]

Figure A-3 shows the three respective \( \text{C/N}_0 \) terms as the function of the cable loss. The combined value of the three \( \text{C/N}_0 \) terms is also plotted in Figure A-3 as the function of the cable loss.

Using the combined \( \text{C/N}_0 \) value for the optical link, the SNR transfer curves can be plotted as the function of the system input SNR and of the FO cable loss. For this the
Figure A-3. Carrier/Noise Ratio per Channel as Function of FO Cable Loss.
C/N₀ value is converted to the nominal video link bandwidth of 25 MHz. Figure 2.4.2.3-3 and 2.4.2.3-4 of the report show this conversion.

REFERENCES


APPENDIX B

DATA SHEETS FOR GENERAL OPTRONICS CORP.
ANALOG LASER DIODE TRANSMITTER UNITS
820nm MULTIMODE LASER MODULE
GO DIP 1000

FEATURES:
- High power/efficient coupling into fiber
- Temperature and power monitoring
- Low modal noise
- Low self-pulsation noise
- High linearity

DESCRIPTION: The GO DIP 1000 is a 14 PIN dual-in-line package incorporating our GOLS 1000 injection laser diode, coupled to a 50µm core fiber. A photodetector and a thermistor are included for power and laser temperature monitoring. An optional thermo-electric cooler can be used in conjunction with the thermistor for temperature stabilization and control. The entire assembly is hermetically sealed, containing no organic material. Thousands of units are now operating worldwide in analog CATV distribution, digital telephone transmission and high speed data link systems.

SPECIFICATIONS (@ 25°C):

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Symbol</th>
<th>Min.</th>
<th>Typ.</th>
<th>Max.</th>
<th>Unit</th>
<th>Remarks</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Threshold Current</td>
<td>Ith</td>
<td>3</td>
<td>80</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>mA</td>
<td>mW out of fiber core</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Light Output</td>
<td>L</td>
<td>250</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>850</td>
<td>mW</td>
<td>L at Ith</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Efficiency</td>
<td>φ</td>
<td>0.08</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td></td>
<td>μW</td>
<td>other λ available</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spontaneous Emission</td>
<td>Lsp</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>250</td>
<td>nm</td>
<td>L = 1,5mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Wavelength</td>
<td>λ</td>
<td>800</td>
<td>820</td>
<td>850</td>
<td>nm</td>
<td>L = 1,5mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Spectral Width</td>
<td>Δλ</td>
<td>1.0</td>
<td>1.5</td>
<td></td>
<td>nm</td>
<td>30% CW @ 1,5mW</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Rise/Fall Time</td>
<td>T</td>
<td>0.5</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>ns</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Forward Voltage</td>
<td>V</td>
<td>1.8</td>
<td>2.0</td>
<td></td>
<td>V</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Monitor Current</td>
<td>Iₘ</td>
<td>0.4</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>2.5</td>
<td>mA</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermostat Resistance</td>
<td>Rₜ</td>
<td>9.5</td>
<td>10.0</td>
<td>10.5</td>
<td>kΩ</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Linearity</td>
<td></td>
<td>-35</td>
<td>-45</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2nd harmonic distortion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3rd harmonic distortion</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber Pigtail (1 meter)</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>core diameter</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>50</td>
<td>53</td>
<td></td>
<td>μm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>cladding diameter</td>
<td>122</td>
<td>125</td>
<td>128</td>
<td></td>
<td>μm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>jacket diameter</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>μm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>numerical aperture</td>
<td>0.18</td>
<td>0.20</td>
<td>0.22</td>
<td></td>
<td>μm</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooler Capacity</td>
<td>ΔΤₘₐₓ</td>
<td>40</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>°C</td>
<td>optional A at ΔΤₘₐₓ</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Cooler Current</td>
<td>Iₖ</td>
<td>0.9</td>
<td>1.1</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS:
- Storage Temperature: -20°C to +60°C
- Operating Temperature:
  -20°C to +60°C
- Soldering Time: 10 seconds at 260°C
- Reverse Voltage: 5V
- Photodetector Reverse Voltage: 30V
- Light Output: 5mW

ORDERING INFORMATION:
Model Number: GO DIP 1000
Wavelength Specifications: Typical range is 800nm to 850nm. Specify if you require: a) wavelengths outside this range; b) tight tolerance on wavelength.
Options: a) customer supplied fiber; b) thermo-electric cooler (TEC).
Aluminum Gallium Arsenide Laser 50mW
Maximum Output at 760 nm to 890 nm. Class IIIb Laser Product
Product complies with 21 CFR 1040.10 and 1040.11.

INVISIBLE LASER RADIATION.
AVOID DIRECT EXPOSURE TO BEAM.

GENERAL OPTRONICS services the right without notice to make changes in equipment design or specifications. Information supplied by GENERAL OPTRONICS is believed to be accurate and reliable. However, no responsibility is assumed by GENERAL OPTRONICS for its use or for any infringement of patents or other rights of third parties which may result from its use. No license is granted by implication or otherwise under any patent or patent right of GENERAL OPTRONICS.
ANALOG LASER DIODE TRANSMITTER
GO ANA

FEATURES:
• Wide electrical Bandwidth
• Power and Temperature Control
• Alarm Circuitry
• Uses Hermetic DIP Package, GO DIP Series

DESCRIPTION: This general purpose analog driver can be ordered with any of our DIP packaged laser diodes. The circuit incorporates all functions in order to monitor the optical power bias and the operating temperature. The transmitter can accommodate all types of analog or digital signals (with 50% duty cycle). Power and temperature are factory set depending on the laser module used inside the transmitter. A detector circuit enables an alarm and monitors the operation of the device.

ABSOLUTE MAXIMUM RATINGS:
• Input Signal: 1Vp-p.
• Supply Voltage: -7V
• Storage Temperature: -50°C to +80°C
• Operating Temperature: -40°C to +65°C

SPECIFICATIONS (at 20°C):
• Power Supply: -5V, +/-5%, 1.2A max.
• Input Impedance: 50-75Ω
• Stability = 1% at 25°C, 3% over temperature range
• RF Input: SMA

ORDERING INFORMATION:
GO ANA XXXX
XXX suffix from GO DIP light source 1000, 1300, 3000, 4000, 6300

Temperature setting is 25°C for transmitters incorporating GO DIP 1000, 3000 and 4000, and 20°C for transmitters incorporating GO DIP 1300 and 6300. Power bias is 1.5mW for multimode fiber pigtail, 500μW for 9μm single mode pigtail, 300μW to 1mW for 5μm single mode pigtales.
APPENDIX C

POWER/IERP CONTROL FOR KU-BAND MA SYSTEM
USER'S TRANSMITTERS
1.0 INTRODUCTION

The purpose of this memo is address the issue of power/EIRP control for the Space Station (SS) Ku-Band multiple access (MA) system users. Due to wide variations in user ranges and antenna gains, the dynamic range of the received signal strength could be quite large. This may necessitate the implementation of a system for controlling the users transmitted power or EIRP. This memo examines an approach to the problem from both a system and hardware perspective.

2.0 PROBLEM STATEMENT

Users of the Ku-Band MA system fall into one of four categories. They are listed here along with the approximate gain of their antennas:

(1) Free Fliers (FF) — 30.3 dB
(2) Orbital Maneuvering Vehicle (OMV) — 13.3 dB
(3) Extravehicular Mobility Unit (EMU) — 3 dB
(4) Mobile Service Center (MSC) — 3 dB
Additionally, they will have a transmitted output power baselined at 1 watt cw (BPSK, QPSK, or 8-PSK*) and an operating frequency range of 14.5 – 14.76 or 14.6 – 14.9 GHz. The difference in the transmitted EIRP of these users along with the wide variation in range will result in a large dynamic range of received signal strength at the SS receiver front end. Since a single receiver must accommodate all MA users, gain control at the receiver is ineffective when signals are received from more than one user at the same time.** As a result, some means must be employed to control user EIRP. This may take the form of a reduction in transmitter output power, switching to a lower gain antenna, or both. A quantitative analysis of the problem has shown that at least 30 – 40 dB of power/EIRP control may be required to maintain received signal strength levels within an acceptable range.

3.0 SYSTEM APPROACH

Switching between antennas as a means of reducing EIRP results in abrupt changes in the received signal power. Additionally, if only two antennas are employed, only two EIRP values are obtainable resulting in coarse power control. Coupled with the expense of engineering multiple antennas, it makes this approach the least attractive. The 30 – 40 dB reduction in EIRP is most easily obtained by varying the transmitter output power.

An approach to this solution is shown in Figure C-1. The user transmitter output power is controlled by varying the driver signal to the solid state amplifier with a PIN diode attenuator. A measurement of the received signal strength for a particular user is made by the SS signal processor. If the signal strength falls below or rises above some predetermined value, a command to change the transmitter output power accordingly is generated and modulated onto the SS to user command link. The signal processor in the user decoders the command and sends the appropriate control signals to the attenuator. The

---

* May require 2.5 watts
** This statement applies to a non-channelized, wideband receiver.
Figure C-1. Functional Block Diagram for User Power Control.
result is similar, a closed loop AGC system. How often the attenuator must be updated and with what granularity would have to be determined based on a study of the rate of change of signal strength due to user motion.

4.0 HARDWARE CONSIDERATIONS

It is worthwhile to examine current device technology and identify possible components that would allow control of the user transmitter output power. A quick review of the requirements shows:

1. User Output Power = 1 watt cw
2. Operating Frequency Range = 14.5 – 14.76 or 14.6 – 14.9 GHz
3. 30 to 40 dB of EIRP/power control

In addition, we require that the 30 – 40 dB of EIRP/power control be achieved by varying the input power to the power amplifier in a linear or quasi-linear manner.

The input-output characteristics of current solid state amplifiers follow the traditional "S" curve found with tube and other types of amplifier, i.e., a thermal noise floor transitioning to a linear region transitioning into a saturated region. The linear region extends from the noise floor to the 1 dB compression point. This is the point where a 10 dB increase in input signal power results in only a 9 dB increase in output signal power. The dynamic range of the linear region can be quite large – often greater than 70 dB.

It's instructive to look at a specific example. Avantek makes a series of communication satellite uplink driver amplifiers (see attachment) that are typical of devices on the market whose performance characteristics closely match the stated requirements. Model #AWP 145101 has the following characteristics:

- Frequency Range: 14.0 – 14.5 GHz
- Output Power: 30 dBm (1 watt)
- Gain: 30 dB
Noise Figure: 10 dB

The thermal noise floor of this device is determined by the following:

\[ P_T = NF - 114 \text{ dBm} + 10 \log Bw \]

where

\[ P_T = \text{noise power in dBm} \]
\[ NF = \text{noise figure} = 10 \text{ dB} \]
\[ Bw = \text{operating bandwidth in MHz} = 300 (14.9 - 14.6 \text{ GHz}) \]

\[ P_T = 10 \text{ dB} - 114 \text{ dBm} + 10 \log 300 \]
\[ = 10 \text{ dB} - 114 \text{ dBm} + 24.8 \text{ dB} \]
\[ P_T = -79.2 \text{ dBm} \]

If the 1 dB compressed gain maximum output power of the device is 30 dBm and the gain 30 dB, then the maximum input signal power is 0 dBm. Hence, the dynamic operating range of the linear region is approximately 79 dB (0 dBm - 79.2 dBm)

While step attenuators could be used to vary the input (and hence the output) power of the signal, given the linear characteristics of the amplifier, the use of continuous attenuators such as PIN diodes is more appropriate. The use of step attenuators can result in phase discontinuities in the signal when switched. Avantek packages many of their amplifiers with a PIN diode attenuator as part of the first stage of the amplifier. Control of the amount of attenuation is obtained by varying the bias voltage to the diode. This can be done mechanically by means of a potential meter mounted on the case, or electrically by means of a gain control circuit. Depending on the frequency, a single PIN diode stage can yield 30 dB of attenuation. If more attenuation is required, additional stages may be connected in series. For example, General Microwave Corporation's Model 3250 digitally
controlled PIN diode attenuator provides up to 60 dB variable attenuation within the band of interest (see attachment).

An alternative, but generally less desirable method of changing the output power is to vary the DC bias voltage to the output stage of the amplifier. This has the adverse effect of changing many of the parameters of the amplifier which, depending on the specific application, may or may not be a problem. Typical changes that result in varying the DC bias voltage are an increase in the noise figure, lowered gain, reduced linear operating region, and degradation of the AM–PM conversion characteristics.

It will be noted that the communications satellite uplink driver amplifiers listed in the attached sheet and used as an example in the section have an operating frequency range of 14.0 to 14.5 GHz while the requirements specify 14.5 to 14.9 GHz operating range. Discussions with manufacturer representatives have verified that the performance characteristics listed would just as easily be obtained for devices in the required operating band. As the attached sheet shows, the amplifiers listed are all designed to meet an existing application. The lack of devices in the 14.5 to 14.9 GHz range is only a reflection of the lack of a demand for such a product and not of any technical difficulties in achieving them.

5.0 CONCLUSIONS

We have presented a variable approach to the user power/EIRP control problem. While effective, it has the drawback of adding additional complexity to the system design of both the user and the SS. A simpler alternative might be to have the users control their output power based solely on their range to the SS. This would result in a simplified open loop system not involving the SS.
### MEDIUM POWER, COMMERCIAL COMMUNICATIONS BAND AMPLIFIERS

Guaranteed Specifications @ 25°C Case Temperature

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Response (MHz)</th>
<th>Power Output (dBm/Watts)</th>
<th>Gain Flatness (-dB)</th>
<th>Typical Intercept Point for IM Products (dB)</th>
<th>Noise Figure (dB)</th>
<th>VSWR (50 ohms)</th>
<th>Input Power Current (MA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>3700 to 4200 MHz</td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-42107</td>
<td>3700-4200</td>
<td>+25/3</td>
<td>+40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-42108</td>
<td>3700-4200</td>
<td>+32/1.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-42109</td>
<td>3700-4200</td>
<td>+40/10</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

5925 to 6425 MHz Point-to-Point Communications or Satellite Uplink Amplifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Response (MHz)</th>
<th>Power Output (dBm/Watts)</th>
<th>Gain Flatness (-dB)</th>
<th>Typical Intercept Point for IM Products (dB)</th>
<th>Noise Figure (dB)</th>
<th>VSWR (50 ohms)</th>
<th>Input Power Current (MA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-64107</td>
<td>5925-6425</td>
<td>+25/3</td>
<td>+40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-64108</td>
<td>5925-6425</td>
<td>+32/1.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-64109</td>
<td>5925-6425</td>
<td>+40/10</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

6425 to 7125 MHz Point-to-Point Communications Amplifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Response (MHz)</th>
<th>Power Output (dBm/Watts)</th>
<th>Gain Flatness (-dB)</th>
<th>Typical Intercept Point for IM Products (dB)</th>
<th>Noise Figure (dB)</th>
<th>VSWR (50 ohms)</th>
<th>Input Power Current (MA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-71107</td>
<td>6425-7125</td>
<td>+25/3</td>
<td>+40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-71108</td>
<td>6425-7125</td>
<td>+32/1.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-71109</td>
<td>6425-7125</td>
<td>+40/10</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7125 to 7725 MHz Point-to-Point Communications Amplifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Response (MHz)</th>
<th>Power Output (dBm/Watts)</th>
<th>Gain Flatness (-dB)</th>
<th>Typical Intercept Point for IM Products (dB)</th>
<th>Noise Figure (dB)</th>
<th>VSWR (50 ohms)</th>
<th>Input Power Current (MA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-77107</td>
<td>7125-7725</td>
<td>+25/3</td>
<td>+40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-77108</td>
<td>7125-7725</td>
<td>+32/1.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-77109</td>
<td>7125-7725</td>
<td>+40/10</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7725 to 8500 MHz Point-to-Point Communications Amplifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Response (MHz)</th>
<th>Power Output (dBm/Watts)</th>
<th>Gain Flatness (-dB)</th>
<th>Typical Intercept Point for IM Products (dB)</th>
<th>Noise Figure (dB)</th>
<th>VSWR (50 ohms)</th>
<th>Input Power Current (MA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-85107</td>
<td>7725-8500</td>
<td>+25/3</td>
<td>+40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-85108</td>
<td>7725-8500</td>
<td>+32/1.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-85109</td>
<td>7725-8500</td>
<td>+40/10</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

7725 to 8275 MHz Point-to-Point Communications Amplifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Response (MHz)</th>
<th>Power Output (dBm/Watts)</th>
<th>Gain Flatness (-dB)</th>
<th>Typical Intercept Point for IM Products (dB)</th>
<th>Noise Figure (dB)</th>
<th>VSWR (50 ohms)</th>
<th>Input Power Current (MA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-83107</td>
<td>7725-8275</td>
<td>+25/3</td>
<td>+40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-83108</td>
<td>7725-8275</td>
<td>+32/1.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-83109</td>
<td>7725-8275</td>
<td>+40/10</td>
<td>47</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

10.7 to 11.7 GHz Point-to-Point Communications Amplifiers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Response (MHz)</th>
<th>Power Output (dBm/Watts)</th>
<th>Gain Flatness (-dB)</th>
<th>Typical Intercept Point for IM Products (dB)</th>
<th>Noise Figure (dB)</th>
<th>VSWR (50 ohms)</th>
<th>Input Power Current (MA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-117107</td>
<td>10.7-11.7</td>
<td>+25/3</td>
<td>+40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-117108</td>
<td>10.7-11.7</td>
<td>+32/1.5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-117109</td>
<td>10.7-11.7</td>
<td>+37/5</td>
<td>43</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

14.0 to 14.5 GHz Communications Satellite Uplink Drivers

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Frequency Response (MHz)</th>
<th>Power Output (dBm/Watts)</th>
<th>Gain Flatness (-dB)</th>
<th>Typical Intercept Point for IM Products (dB)</th>
<th>Noise Figure (dB)</th>
<th>VSWR (50 ohms)</th>
<th>Input Power Current (MA)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-145001</td>
<td>14.0-14.5</td>
<td>+24/25</td>
<td>+40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-145002</td>
<td>14.0-14.5</td>
<td>+27/5</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-145101</td>
<td>14.0-14.5</td>
<td>+30/1.0</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-145102</td>
<td>14.0-14.5</td>
<td>+33/2</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-145103</td>
<td>14.0-14.5</td>
<td>+34/3</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-145503</td>
<td>14.0-14.5</td>
<td>+34/3</td>
<td>40</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-145504</td>
<td>14.0-14.5</td>
<td>+36/4</td>
<td>41</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>AWP-145505</td>
<td>14.0-14.5</td>
<td>+37/5</td>
<td>42</td>
<td>10</td>
<td>1.2</td>
<td>+15</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

For case drawings, contact Avantek, Inc., 180 Blue Ravine Road, Folsom, CA 95630-Phone (916) 985-1201.

Note 1: Units are available with or without top and/or bottom heatsinks.
The Model 3250 digitally programmable attenuator provides excellent performance characteristics over the frequency range of 0.2 to 18 GHz. Attenuation levels up to 60 dB are programmable in increments of 1 dB.

The unit is an integrated assembly of a dual T-pad PIN diode attenuator and a driver consisting of a D/A and a V/I Converter. See figures 1 and 2.

The Model 3250 operates as a bilaterally-matched device at all attenuation levels. It is supplied in a compact rugged package well-suited to military applications.

**Fig. 1-Model 3250, block diagram**

**Fig. 2-Model 3250, rf schematic diagram (unit consists of two such sections)**
PERFORMANCE CHARACTERISTICS

Frequency Range ........... 0.2 to 18 GHz

Mean Attenuation Range
0.2 to 12.4 GHz .......... 60 dB
12.4 to 18 GHz .......... 50 dB

Insertion Loss (max.)
0.2 to 8 GHz .......... 2.5 dB
8 to 12.4 GHz .......... 3.0 dB
12.4 to 18 GHz .......... 5.0 dB

VSWR (max.)
0.2 to 8 GHz .......... 1.75
8 to 12.4 GHz .......... 2.0
12.4 to 18 GHz .......... 3.0

Accuracy of Attenuation\(^{\circ}\) ± 0.3 dB

Temperature Coefficient ... 0.02 dB/°C max.

Power Handling Capability
Without Performance Degradation ........ From 0.4 to 100 mW cw or peak (see Figure 3 below)

Power Handling Capability (cont)
Survival Power (from -65°C to +25°C; see power derating curve, Figure 4 below, for higher temperatures) ...... 2W average or peak (1 μsec max pulse width)

Switching Time ............ 20 μsec max.

Programming ............... Positive true binary (standard) or BCD (option 1). For complementary code, specify Option 2.

Minimum Attenuation Step .1.0 dB

Logic Input
Logic 0 .................... -0.3 to +0.7V
Logic 1 .................... +2.5 to +5.0V

Power Supply Requirements ......... +5V ± 5%, 310 mA
+15V ± 5%, 100 mA
-15V ± 5%, 100 mA

Power Supply Rejection .... Less than 0.1 dB/volt change in any supply

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>ATTEN. (dB)</th>
<th>Frequency (GHz)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>0.2 to 8.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>20</td>
<td>0.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>30</td>
<td>0.7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>40</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>50</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>60</td>
<td>1.0</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

(1) At calibration frequency. All units are calibrated at 4 GHz. Calibration at other frequencies within the band is available upon request.

![Fig. 3-Model 3250, maximum peak and average operating power without performance degradation.](image)

![Fig. 4-Model 3250, survival power derating factors.](image)
Model 3250
Specifications

ENVIRONMENTAL RATINGS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Range</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Operating Temperature Range</td>
<td>-54°C to +110°C</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Non-Operating Temperature Range</td>
<td>-65°C to +125°C</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Humidity: MIL-STD-202F, Method 103B, Cond. B (96 hrs. at 95%)


Vibration: MIL-STD-202F, Method 204D, Cond. B (.06" double amplitude or 15G, whichever is less)

Altitude: MIL-STD-202F, Method 105C, Cond. B (50,000 ft.)


AVAILABLE OPTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Option No.</th>
<th>Description</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>BCD programming (Binary is standard)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>Complementary programming (positive true is standard)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>Two SMA male rf connectors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>One SMA male and one SMA female rf connector</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

PIN FUNCTIONS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>PIN NO.</th>
<th>BINARY</th>
<th>BCD (Opt. 1)</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>SPARE</td>
<td>SPARE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>SPARE</td>
<td>SPARE</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>+5V</td>
<td>+5V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>DIGITAL &amp; DIGITAL &amp; POWER GND POWER GND</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>1 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>GND</td>
<td>2 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>1 dB</td>
<td>4 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>8</td>
<td>2 dB</td>
<td>8 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>9</td>
<td>4 dB</td>
<td>10 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>10</td>
<td>8 dB</td>
<td>20 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>11</td>
<td>16 dB</td>
<td>40 dB</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>12</td>
<td>32 dB</td>
<td>OPEN (NO CONNECTION)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>13</td>
<td>+15V</td>
<td>+15V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>14</td>
<td>-15V</td>
<td>-15V</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>15</td>
<td>SPARE</td>
<td>SPARE</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

ACCESSORY FURNISHED

Mating power/logic connector

DIMENSIONS AND WEIGHTS

MODEL 3250
Wt: 4 oz. (113 gm) approx.

Dimensional Tolerances, unless otherwise indicated: XX ± .02, XXX ± .005
APPENDIX O

DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS FOR A UNIVERSAL MULTI-CHANNEL MODEM FOR SPACE STATION KU-BAND LINKS
DESIGN CONSIDERATIONS FOR A UNIVERSAL MULTI-CHANNEL MODEM FOR SPACE STATION KU-BAND LINKS

Interim Report

Contract No. NAS9-17414

Prepared for
NASA Lyndon B. Johnson Space Center
Houston, TX 77058

Technical Monitor: Dean Bratton

Prepared by
Sergei Udalov
James Dodds

Axiomatix
9841 Airport Boulevard
Suite 912
Los Angeles, CA 90045

Axiomatix Report No. R8702-2
February 28, 1987
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Section</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>List of Figures</td>
<td>i</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>List of Tables</td>
<td>iii</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1.0 INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW</td>
<td>1</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2.0 MODEM REQUIREMENTS</td>
<td>2</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.0 MODEM IMPLEMENTATION</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1 Modulator Configurations</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.1 Configuration for 4/8-PSK with Two Quadrature Modulators</td>
<td>7</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.1.2 Configuration for 4/8-PSK with Two AM Modulators</td>
<td>14</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2 Demodulator</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.1 Block Diagram Description</td>
<td>18</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.2 Carrier Tracking Error Circuit</td>
<td>21</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3 Data Recovery Circuitry</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3.1 Data Recovery for 8-PSK Mode</td>
<td>23</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.2.3.1 Data Recovery for 4-PSK Mode</td>
<td>26</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3 Design Considerations</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1 Channel BER</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.1 General</td>
<td>29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.1.2 Effect of Data Angle Imbalance on Channel BER</td>
<td>31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2 Tolerance to RF Circuitry Impairments</td>
<td>34</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2.1 Amplitude and Delay</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.2.2 Carrier Phase Jitter</td>
<td>36</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3.3.3 Implementation Philosophy</td>
<td>38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
# LIST OF FIGURES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Figure</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2.1</td>
<td>Functional Diagram of a Multi-Channel 4/8-PSK Modem System</td>
<td>4</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 2-2</td>
<td>Functional Hardware Partitioning for the 4/8-PSK Modulator and Demodulator</td>
<td>5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.1.1-1</td>
<td>Quadrature Modulator Implementation with Two Bi-Phase Modulators</td>
<td>8</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.1.1-2</td>
<td>Functional Block Diagram of 4/8-PSK Modem Implemented with Two Quadrature Modulators</td>
<td>9</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.1.1-3</td>
<td>Generation of an 8-PSK Signal by Means of Two Quadrature Modulators Shifed by 45 Degrees</td>
<td>11</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.1.1-4</td>
<td>Octal Mapper for 3-Channel 8-PSK Modulator Implementation with Two Quadrature Modulators</td>
<td>12</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.1.1-5</td>
<td>Octal Mapper Logic Implementation</td>
<td>13</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.1.2-1</td>
<td>Signal Constellation and Coordinate Definition for 8-PSK Modulation</td>
<td>15</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.1.2-2</td>
<td>Functional Block Diagram of 4/8-PSK Modem Implemented with Two AM Modulators in Quadrature</td>
<td>16</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.2.1-1</td>
<td>Block Diagram for an 4/8-PSK Demodulator</td>
<td>19</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.2.1-2</td>
<td>Phase Relationship between Phase Detector Pairs A/B and C/D and an 8-PSK Signal</td>
<td>20</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.2.2-1</td>
<td>Carrier Tracking Error Circuit</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.2.2-2</td>
<td>Carrier Tracking Error for 8-PSK and for 4-PSK Modulation</td>
<td>24</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.2.3-1</td>
<td>Data Recovery Circuitry and Decoding Algorithm for an 8-PSK Demodulator</td>
<td>25</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.2.3-2</td>
<td>Data Demodulation Circuit for 8-PSK Demodulator</td>
<td>28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.3.1.1-1</td>
<td>BER vs. PSK Modulation Level and Symbol-to-Noise Ratio $E_s/E_N$</td>
<td>30</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Figure 3.3.1.2-1</td>
<td>Effect of Imbalance on Channel BER vs. $E_s/E_N$ Ratio</td>
<td>32</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
Figure 3.3.1.2-2  Channels 1 & 2 vs. Channel 3 Imbalance (\( \alpha \)) 33
Figure 3.3.1.2-3  Effect of Imbalance on Average BER of Channels 1, 2, and 3 35
Figure 3.3.2.1-1  Power Penalties Due to Amplitude and Delay Distortion at BER = 10\(^{-6}\) 37
Figure 3.3.2.2-1  Power Penalties Due to Carrier Phase Jitter at BER = 10\(^{-6}\) 37
Figure 3.3.3-1  Block Diagram of a Digitally Implemented Demodulator 39
Figure A-1  Demodulator for 4-PSK (QPSK) Mode 44
# LIST OF TABLES

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Table</th>
<th>Description</th>
<th>Page</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Table 2-1</td>
<td>Return Link Requirements for Ku-band MA-Users</td>
<td>3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Table 3.2.3-1</td>
<td>Demodulator Output Signals for an 8-PSK Demodulator</td>
<td>27</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>
1.0 INTRODUCTION AND OVERVIEW

This report presents a baseline design of a universal 4/8-PSK modem for potential utilization by the Space Station Ku-band, multiple-access system users. Although the present concept of the return links can be satisfied by a conventional 4-PSK (i.e., QPSK) modulation providing either two independent channels, or one channel coded at rate 1/2, the motivation to consider the 8-PSK mode results from the MSC requirement for 3 digital television channels. Thus, the idea expressed in this report is that a 4-PSK modem design baselined for the major portion of users can be expanded to include an 8-PSK capability at a reasonable cost in increased complexity. In other words, the intent here is to assume a 4-PSK design as a baseline which is easily expanded to include an 8-PSK capability. Ideally, the component partitioning would be such that a major portion of the modem will consist of the 4-PSK capability, with the 8-PSK capability provided in the form of plug-in modules for the MSC user as well as for other users which may require 3 digital TV channels in the future.

The design considerations presented in this report are driven by the requirement to transmit and receive digital TV signals at rates up to 22 Mbps – 25 Mbps per channel. Thus, circuit configurations which can be implemented by high speed circuitry are given primary consideration.

The requirements for the modem in terms of data rates are summarized briefly in Section 2. Modem implementation is outlined in Section 3. In Section 3.1 modulator configurations are presented. Section 3.2 then describes a design for a corresponding demodulator. Section 4 presents conclusions. Appendix A contains a simplified analysis of modem operation in the 4-PSK mode.
2.0 MODEM REQUIREMENTS

The return link requirements for Ku-band MA users are summarized in Table 2-1. From the table, it can be seen that there are basically two return rates; one at about 100 kbps and the other at about 22 Mbps. Although, as shown in the table, the two Phase B contractors established slightly different requirements for these two rates, the implementation driver for the modem is still the upper rate which may be as high as 25 Mbps according the RI estimate.

The functional goals which are the motivators for considering an 8-PSK modem to meet the MSC requirement for 3 simultaneous digital TV channels are as follows:

1) Addition of the three-channel capability must not increase RF channel bandwidth significantly beyond that for the two-channel mode.

2) Modulation method should not change drastically when the modem switches from 2-channel to 3-channel mode.

3) The modem must have as much hardware commonality as possible between the 2-channel and the 3-channel modes.

Figure 2-1 shows a functional diagram of a 4/8-PSK multi-channel modem utilization within the Ku-band MA system. As indicated, the 4-PSK (i.e., QPSK) mode is the baseline, and the 8-PSK mode is considered as a multi-channel capability. This diagram is responsive to the goals stated above. One of the salient features of the concept shown in Figure 2-1 is that a constant envelope signal is provided by the 8-PSK operation making it fully compatible with the RF amplification equipment used with the 4-PSK mode.

Figure 2-2 shows a functional hardware partitioning for the proposed 4/8-PSK modulator and the corresponding demodulator. The main idea expressed in Figure 2-2 is that the 4-PSK mode is the baseline mode for the modem and that the 8-PSK mode is a hardware "add-on" to be utilized by such users as the MSC. Such partitioning requirement determines the modem implementation/configuration design described in the subsequent section of this report.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>User</th>
<th>TLM/Voice (kbps)</th>
<th>Video (Mbps)</th>
<th>Comments</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td>MCDD</td>
<td>RI</td>
<td>MCDD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>MSC</td>
<td>160</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>EVA</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>NSTS</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>N/A</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>OMV/OTV</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>FF/COP</td>
<td>100</td>
<td>128</td>
<td>22</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

MCCD = Requirement established by McDonnell Douglas Corp. team [1].
RI = Requirement established by Rockwell International team [2].

Table 2-1. Return Link Requirements for Ku-band MA-Users.
Figure 2-1. Functional Diagram of a Multi-Channel 4/8-PSK Modem System.
Figure 2-2. Functional Hardware Partitioning for the 4/8 PSK Modulator (a) and Demodulator (b).
Because the subject matter of this report deals mainly with the implementation of the modulation/demodulation functions of the proposed modem, we do not address the issues of an IF frequency at which the actual modem implementation should take place. It suffices to state, however, that an IF frequency in the range of 150 MHz to 700 MHz is envisioned. The final selection of the IF frequency will be determined by the frequency plan of a particular Ku-band MA system selected for the Space Station/user application.
3.0 MODEM IMPLEMENTATION

3.1 Modulator Configurations

3.1.1 Configuration for 4/8-PSK with Two Quadrature Modulators

Because the main idea for a universal modem is to provide a maximum amount of component commonality between the 4-PSK and 8-PSK modes, let us consider first an implementation which uses two quadrature modulators to extend a 4-PSK capability to that of an 8-PSK. For this we first consider a single 4-PSK (i.e., QPSK) modulator implemented with two orthogonal bi-phase modulators.

Part (a) of Figure 3.1.1-1 shows the configuration for such a quadrature modulator implemented with two bi-phase modulators whose phases are orthogonal to each other. As shown in part (a), the bi-phase modulator #1 is driven by baseband data stream a(t), and bi-phase modulator #2 is driven by baseband data b(t). The resultant signal constellation is shown in part (b) of Figure 3.1.1-1.

The positions of the resultant QPSK vectors shown in (b) have been arranged according to the Gray coding technique. With this technique a 90° phase error in the demodulator output results in only a one-bit output error at the time of the error. With other coding schemes both output bits will be in error when a 90° wrong decision is made at the demodulator. This is an important point, because in the subsequent implementation of an 8-PSK modulator, the phase constellation representing positions of 3-bit symbols will be also encoded with Gray code.

Figure 3.1.1-2 shows a functional diagram of 4/8-PSK modem implemented with two quadrature modulators. Each of these modulators is like the quadrature modulator shown in (a) of Figure 3.1.1-1. Thus when the modem is in the 4-PSK mode, only modulator #1 is operational. In this mode it accommodates two baseband channels a(t) and b(t). These can be either two independent channels or two components of rate 1/2 encoded single data stream.
Figure 3.1.1-1. Quadrature Modulator Implementation with Two Bi-Phase Modulators
For the 8-PSK mode quadrature modulator #2 is activated in addition to modulator #1 and the outputs of the two modulators are added together to provide an 8-PSK signal. The resultant signal constellation is shown in Figure 3.1.1-3. As can be seen from this constellation, as well as from Figure 3.1.1-2, the outputs of the two quadrature modulators are shifted by 45° with respect to each other. This phase shift permits the two modulators to generate eight vectors which are positioned at multiples of 45° along the constellation locus circle. These vectors, labeled 0 through 7, are encoded in Gray code as indicated in the corresponding parenthesis.

It is important to note that use of two quadrature modulators requires two pairs of binary numbers each number consisting of two bits. These bit pairs are labeled a,b and c,d for modulators #1 and #2, respectively. The data inputs a,b and c,d are also indicated in the block diagram of Figure 3.1.1-2.

However, the maximum number of baseband data streams applied to the modem in 8-PSK mode is three. Thus, a method for generating four data streams to drive two quadrature modulators is required. This method is provided by an octal mapper shown in Figure 3.1.1-4. In that figure the logic equations which relate the three binary input data streams d_1(t), d_2(t), and d_3(t) to the required binary pairs a,b and c,d are indicated. These equations provide for Gray code mapping of the three input data streams by means of two quadrature generators.

Figure 3.1.1-5 shows logic implementation for the octal mapper. Because of relatively high clock rates used by the modem (~25 MHz), it is important that proper timing is maintained between signals a, b, c, and d. As can be seen in Figure 3.1.1-5, signals c and d have no logic elements in their paths, while signals a and b have traveled through logic gates. Thus, a simple way to compensate for this would be insert similar gates into paths d_1 to c and d_2 to d. These gates should be identical to the type of gates used for generating signals a and b. Typically, these may be spare gates in the same IC package as
Figure 3.1.1-3. Generation of an 8-PSK Signal by Means of Two Quadrature Modulators Shifted by 45 Degrees.

a, b = Quadrature Modulator # 1 Code

c, d = Quadrature Modulator # 2 Code
Figure 3.1.1-4. Octal Mapper for 3-Channel 8 PSK Modulator Implementation with Two Quadrature Modulators.
Figure 3.1.1-5. Octal Mapper Logic Implementation.
the "functional" gates. It is also recommended that emitter-coupled logic (ECL) elements be considered for modem implementation.

3.1.2 Configuration for 4/8-PSK with Two AM Modulators

An alternate approach to using two quadrature modulators for generation of 8-PSK signal would be to synthesize the eight phases of the constellation by using the appropriate in-phase (I) and quadrature (Q) components of each constellation point. This is illustrated in part (a) of Figure 3.1.2-1. As shown there, signal 0 (Gray code 0, 0, 0) consists of an I-component of 0.924 and a Q-component of 0.383 for a normalized RF envelope of unity. Part (b) of Figure 3.1.2-1 gives the I and Q values of all of the sixteen components required to form the 8-PSK constellation. Figure 3.1.2-2 shows the block diagram for implementing this approach. As shown in the figure the Quad/Octal Mapper selects the proper digital equivalents of the I and Q components based on the required mapping of the input data bits \( d_1(t), d_2(t), \) and \( d_3(t) \) into the Gray code.

These digital components are applied to two digital/analog (D/A) converters which, in turn, feed the analog I and Q signals to the corresponding amplitude (AM) modulators. The AM modulators are driven by RF carriers which are orthogonal to each other and, consequently, the summed outputs of these modulators represents the correct phase of resultant vector.

The number of bits \( n \) used for D/A conversion must be a compromise between accuracy and the speed, the latter being determined by the settling time of the D/A converters. Our preliminary analysis indicates that an 8-bit accuracy is sufficient for this application. Fast settling D/A converters are available with current ECL technology which is recommended for this application.

For the 4-PSK mode, the mapper puts out digital words which result in I and Q components of \( \pm 1.000 \). Based on combination of input bits \( d_1(t) \) and \( d_2(t) \), the appropriate quadrature coding is generated as was shown in Figure 3.1.1-1, part (b).
(a) 8-PSK Signal Constellation with Gray Code Mapping of Coded Binary 3-Tuple

(b) Signal Definition for 8-PSK

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Octal Symbol</th>
<th>Phase (deg.)</th>
<th>Magnitude of Quadrature Components</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td></td>
<td></td>
<td>I</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>+22.5</td>
<td>+0.924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>+67.5</td>
<td>+0.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>+112.5</td>
<td>−0.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>+157.5</td>
<td>−0.924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>−157.5</td>
<td>−0.924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>−112.5</td>
<td>−0.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>−67.5</td>
<td>+0.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>−22.5</td>
<td>+0.924</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3.1.2-1. Signal Constellation (a) and Coordinate Definition (b) for 8-PSK Modulation
Figure 3.1.2-2. Functional Block Diagram of 4/8 PSK Modern Implemented with Two AM Modulators in Quadrature
It is important to note that only one of the AM modulators is actuated at any one time when the 4-PSK mode is being used and each of the AM modulators is putting out a carrier of unity magnitude and of phase either 0° or 180°. Thus, in designing the balanced modulators attention must be paid to switching speeds and other factors which determine the transient behavior of the modulators. An alternate approach to implementing the 4-PSK mode with two AM modulators is generate a set of I and Q components corresponding to 90° constellation spacing (i.e., I, Q = ±0.707) and use two modulators simultaneously, with only the RF phase changing to generate the required QPSK vectors. There may be some implementation advantage with this alternate approach.

At this point, however, we believe that the details of the implementation and hardware trade-offs are better left to the modem designers. Also, some breadboard tests may be required to experimentally determine the finer points of the design trade-offs.
3.2 Demodulator

3.2.1 Block Diagram Description

The block diagram for a 4/8-PSK demodulator is shown in Figure 3.2.1-1. As shown in the figure, there are four phase detectors. Phase detectors PD-A and PD-B comprise one orthogonal pair. Detectors PD-C and PD-D comprise the second orthogonal pair. Both detector pairs are driven by the local reference carrier VCO, but the VCO signal to the second pair (PD-C and PD-D) is shifted by 45 degrees with respect to the first pair (PD-A and PD-B). This relationship is shown in Figure 3.2.1-2.

It must be noted that for demodulation of a 4-PSK signal only phase detectors A and B are sufficient. However, for an 8-PSK demodulation scheme described here, all four phase detectors are required to develop the carrier tracking error and to recover the data. Thus, in all subsequent discussions, the 8-PSK mode will be emphasized due to the fact that the 4-PSK mode is only a smaller subset of the 8-PSK mode.

As indicated in Figure 3.2.1-1, the baseband outputs of the phase detectors A through D are applied to a unit labeled Data Demodulation and Carrier Error Detector Circuitry. In this unit the outputs of the phase detectors are processed to generate the carrier phase tracking error $\theta$. Also, the output data streams $d_1(t)$, $d_2(t)$, and $d_3(t)$ are recovered and applied to their respective destinations.

The bandwidth of the lowpass filters (LPFs) must be optimized to the incoming data rate. Thus, a bandwidth selection feature is also indicated in the block diagram. For example, for telemetry only mode the "low" rate is about 100 kbps. On the other hand, for digital TV and telemetry, the "high" data rate is in the order of 22 Mbps to 25 Mbps. The requirement for the modem to accommodate the high data rate is the primary driver which determines the implementation tradeoffs at the circuit design level.
Figure 3.2.1-1. Block Diagram for an 4/8-PSK Demodulator
Legend:
\[\begin{align*}
\text{d}_1 & \quad \text{d}_2 \quad \text{d}_3 \\
\{ & \quad \{ (d_1, d_2, d_3) \}
\end{align*}\]

\[M = \frac{2k + 1}{8} (\pi)\]
\[k = \text{octal symbol}\]

0, 1, 2, ..., 7 are octal symbols for phase codes

Figure 3.2.1-2. Phase Relationship between Phase Detector Pairs A/B and C/D and an 8-PSK Signal.
3.2.2 Carrier Tracking Error Circuit

Figure 3.2.2-1 depicts a block diagram of the carrier tracking error circuit. The circuit consists of four baseband multipliers, BM-A through BM-D, four hard limiter circuits and several analog adders/subtractors. Similar to the demodulator, only the upper portion of the circuit is required for the 4-PSK mode. However, since the uniqueness of this modem is defined by its 8-PSK capability, we will concentrate on that aspect of the circuit.

The specific requirement of the carrier tracking circuit, whether it is in the 4-PSK or in the 8-PSK modes, is to develop some sort of an "S-curve" which will provide a stable lock point, i.e., a point at which the carrier tracking error $\theta$ goes to zero. Providing such a curve for suppressed carrier, data-modulated systems is complicated by the fact that the carrier tracking signal, in addition to being proportional to the carrier, tracking error also contains data modulation. This modulation has to be removed from the carrier error signal to make it usable for its intended function. For the antipodal biphase modulation the "third multiplier" in the Costas loop provides the function of removing the data modulation from the carrier tracking error developed in the "Q-channel" of the loop. As the modulation complexity expands to 4-PSK and 8-PSK, the implementation of the carrier tracking loop also increases in complexity.

Using the nomenclature of Figure 3.2.2-1, the carrier tracking error $e_\theta$ for the 8-PSK mode is:

$$
e_\theta = -A \text{ sgn } B + B \text{ sgn } A - C \text{ sgn } D + D \text{ sgn } C$$

$$= -\sqrt{S} \cos[\theta + \phi_m(t)] \text{ sgn } \sqrt{S} \sin[\theta + \phi_m(t)]$$

$$+\sqrt{S} \sin[\theta + \phi_m(t)] \text{ sgn } \sqrt{S} \cos[\theta + \phi_m(t)]$$

$$-\sqrt{S} \cos[\theta + \phi_m(t) - 45^\circ] \text{ sgn } \sqrt{S} \sin[\theta + \phi_m(t) - 45^\circ]$$

$$+\sqrt{S} \sin[\theta + \phi_m(t) - 45^\circ] \text{ sgn } \sqrt{S} \cos[\theta + \phi_m(t) - 45^\circ]$$

(1)
\[ A = \sqrt{S} \cos [\theta + \phi_m(t)] \]
\[ B = \sqrt{S} \sin [\theta + \phi_m(t)] \]
\[ C = \sqrt{S} \cos [\theta + \phi_m(t) - 45^\circ] \]
\[ D = \sqrt{S} \sin [\theta + \phi_m(t) - 45^\circ] \]

Figure 3.2.2-1. Carrier Tracking Error Circuit
Part (a) of Figure 3.2.2-2 shows the plot of the carrier error voltage $e_0$ versus carrier tracking error in degrees for an 8-PSK demodulator. The plot shown there is the plot of Equation (1) above. Note that this plot is independent of the phase modulation function $\phi_m(t)$ as long as $\phi_m(t)$ is defined as $(2k + 1)\pi/8$ where $k=0,1,2,...,7$ for the 8-PSK modulation. It must be also noted that the S-curve "tracks" linearly only within an interval defined by $\pm 22.5^\circ$ which is the spacing between the phases of an 8-PSK signal (see Figure 3.2.1-2).

Part (b) of Figure 3.2.2-2 shows an S-curve for the 4/8-PSK demodulator in the 4-PSK mode.* As can be seen from this curve, the stable lock points for the 4-PSK mode are spaced by $90^\circ$ and the linear tracking range extends over the range of $\pm 45^\circ$. This is consistent with the QPSK modulation.

### 3.2.3 Data Recovery Circuitry

#### 3.2.3.1 Data Recovery for 8-PSK Mode

The function of the data recovery circuitry in the 8-PSK mode is to convert the four outputs (A, B, C, and D) of the four respective phase detectors (PD-A, PD-B, PD-C, and PD-D) into three independent data streams defined by $d_1(t)$, $d_2(t)$, and $d_3(t)$. Part (a) of Figure 3.2.3-1 provides a functional representation of this requirement. This "four into three" conversion is an inverse operation of the octal mapper shown in Figure 3.1.1-4.

To provide for better physical understanding of the demodulator action in the 8-PSK mode we have identified axes A and B as I and Q, and axes C and D as I' and Q', respectively. Based on the polarity of the I, Q, I', and Q' signals, the bits $d_1$, $d_2$, and $d_3$ is 0 if Q-output is positive. Conversely, $d_1 = 1$ if Q-output is negative. Similarly, from Figure 3.2.1-2, we note that $d_2 = 1$ when I-output is negative and $d_2 = 0$ when it is positive.

*For derivation of the 4-PSK carrier phase error term, see Appendix A.
Figure 3.2.2-2. Carrier Tracking Error (a) for 8-PSK and (b) for 4-PSK Modulation.
(a) Functional diagram of data recovery circuit.

(b) Data recovery algorithm for an 8-PSK demodulator.

Figure 3.2.3-1. Data Recovery Circuitry (a) and Decoding Algorithm (b) for an 8-PSK Demodulator.
The decoding of the last bit, \( d_3 \), is somewhat more complicated. Observation of the phase diagram in Figure 3.2.1-2 indicates that \( d_3 = 1 \) for two cases. One is when both I' and Q' are positive, thus representing octal numbers 1 and 2. The second case for \( d_3 = 1 \) is when both I' and Q' are both negative, i.e., octal numbers 5 and 6 are received. The condition \( d_3 = 0 \) occurs when I' and Q' have different polarities. This occurs for octal symbols 3, 4, 0, and 7. Table 3.2.3-1 supports the above-presented arguments in terms of the actual magnitudes and polarities of the outputs of an 8-PSK demodulator.

Figure 3.2.3-2 shows an 8-PSK data demodulation circuit which implements the data recovery algorithm given in part (b) of Figure 3.2.3-1. As shown in Figure 3.2.3-2, the I/Q and I'/Q' signals are applied to four threshold circuits. The threshold circuits convert the analog signals into the digital (binary 1 or 0) formats according to the decoding algorithm chosen. The operation of converting the four baseband signal outputs of an 8-PSK demodulator into three data streams, i.e., \( d_1, d_2, \) and \( d_3 \), is thus accomplished.

### 3.2.3.2 Data Recovery for the 4-PSK Mode

For the 4-PSK mode, i.e., a conventional QPSK modulation, the demodulator is reconfigured to use only the upper half of the circuitry shown in Figures 3.2.1-1 and 3.2.2-1. The details of the demodulator operation in the QPSK mode is given in Appendix A. A different labeling is used in the Appendix, but functionally \( a(t) \) in the Appendix is \( d_1 \) and \( b(t) \) is \( d_2 \).
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Octal Symbol</th>
<th>Modulation Angle M Degrees</th>
<th>( I = \cos M )</th>
<th>( Q = \sin M )</th>
<th>( I' = \cos(M - 45^\circ) )</th>
<th>( Q' = \sin(M - 45^\circ) )</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0</td>
<td>22.5</td>
<td>0.924</td>
<td>0.383</td>
<td>0.924</td>
<td>-0.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>1</td>
<td>67.5</td>
<td>0.383</td>
<td>0.924</td>
<td>0.924</td>
<td>0.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>2</td>
<td>112.5</td>
<td>-0.383</td>
<td>0.924</td>
<td>0.383</td>
<td>0.924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>3</td>
<td>157.5</td>
<td>-0.924</td>
<td>0.383</td>
<td>-0.383</td>
<td>0.924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>4</td>
<td>202.5</td>
<td>-0.924</td>
<td>-0.383</td>
<td>-0.924</td>
<td>0.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>5</td>
<td>247.5</td>
<td>-0.383</td>
<td>-0.924</td>
<td>-0.383</td>
<td>-0.383</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>6</td>
<td>292.5</td>
<td>0.383</td>
<td>-0.924</td>
<td>-0.383</td>
<td>-0.924</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>7</td>
<td>337.5</td>
<td>0.924</td>
<td>-0.383</td>
<td>0.383</td>
<td>-0.924</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

\[ M = (2d - 1)\pi/8 \quad d = 0, 1, 2, \ldots, 7 \]

*Output signals normalized to a maximum value of unity.

Table 3.2.3-1. Demodulator Output Signals for an 8-PSK Demodulator.
Figure 3.2.3-2. Data Demodulation Circuit for 8-PSK Demodulator.
3.3 Design Considerations

The addition of an 8-PSK capability to the baseline 4-PSK mode imposes certain design considerations not only on the modulator and the demodulator units but also on the transmitter and the receiver units of the MA link as well. In this section, we address some of these considerations particularly from the standpoint of how they affect the performance of the 8-PSK mode.

3.3.1 Channel BER

3.3.1.1 General

Throughout this report we have been referring either to two data streams, identified as $d_1$ and $d_2$, for the 4-PSK mode or to three data streams, identified as $d_1$, $d_2$, and $d_3$, for the 8-PSK mode. Operationally, this means that we have either a two-channel capability ($d_1$ and $d_2$ in the 4-PSK mode) or a three-channel capability ($d_1$, $d_2$, and $d_3$ in the 8-PSK mode). Because the on-going discussion concerns the 8-PSK mode, we will refer to the independent channels available in this mode as channels 1, 2, and 3.

Consider first the BER behavior of the 8-PSK mode. Figure 3.3.1.1-1 shows the BER performance comparison of the 8-PSK mode with that of the baseline 4-PSK and the 2-PSK modes which are included in the figure for purpose. An interesting feature of the 8-PSK curve is that channels 1 and 2 provide a slightly better BER performance than channel 3. This is due to the fact that, as was shown in Figure 3.2.3-1, the recovery of the data streams $d_1$ and $d_2$ is based on the hard decisions in I and Q half-planes, but the decision for the $d_3$ data stream is based on narrower regions of several quarter-planes. In terms of the penalty in the $E_s/E_N$ ratio, this difference between channels 1, 2 and channel 3 is only about 0.3 dB at BER of $10^{-5}$, which is the specified BER for the digital video transmission. The advantage, however, is the simplicity of the data demodulation circuitry as was illustrated in Figure 3.2.3-2.
Figure 3.3.1.1-1. BER vs. PSK Modulation Level and Symbol-to-noise Ratio $E_s/E_N$. 

BER Spec
An alternate method of recovering the data streams \( d_1, d_2, \) and \( d_3 \) would be to use only the I and Q axes and solve for the modulation angle \( M \) using the I and Q components recovered by the I and Q-axis demodulators. This would be an optimum symbol detection method, but for the Gray incoding, it would still make channel 3 BER somewhat worse than channels 1 and 2.

We at Axiomatix have also explored a data decision algorithm which equalizes the BER in all three channels. However, such an equalization results in a BER which is equal to that of channel 3 as shown in Figure 3.3.1-1. Thus, the conclusion is that the RF link which uses an 8-PSK modulation would be designed to achieve BER of \( 10^{-5} \) in channel 3 based on curves in Figure 3.3.1-1. In this case channels 1 and 2 would simply have an additional margin of 0.3 dB.

### 3.3.1.2 Effect of Data Angle Imbalance on Channel BER

As explained in Section 3.2, the data demodulation boundaries are defined by two sets of orthogonal axes I/Q and I'/Q'. An examination of the phase relationship shown in Figure 3.2.1-2 indicates that for an ideal implementation all eight phases of the 8-PSK signal are never more than 22.5 degrees from either one of the orthogonal axes defined by the I/Q and I'/Q' pairs. With a practical implementation of the modulator/demodulator, a question arises in regards to the angular (i.e., phase) tolerance, or imbalance, with which the 8-PSK data is generated at the transmitter and demodulated at the receiver. Imbalance is defined as per Figure 3.3.1.2-2. Figure 3.3.1.2-1 shows the effect of imbalance on the BER of the channel 1, 2, and the channel 3 data outputs. From this figure it is evident that at \( E_s/E_N \) of 18 dB, there is very little angular tolerance allowed for imbalance. This, in turn, translates into a very "tight" angular tolerance on the angular relationship between the I, Q, I', and Q' axes. For \( E_s/E_N = 18.5 \) dB the allowed tolerance increases, and for \( E_s/E_N = 19 \) dB the allowed tolerance falls within the limits \((90^\circ \pm 2^\circ)\) of the practical quadrature hybrids. Such hybrids would be used for implementing both the modulator and the
Figure 3.3.1.2-1. Effect of Imbalance on Channel BER vs. $E_s/E_N$ Ratio.

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>$E_s/E_N$ (dB)</th>
<th>Allowed* Tolerance ± deg</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>18</td>
<td>1.1 ± 0.3</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>18.5</td>
<td>2.3 ± 1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>19</td>
<td>3.4 ± 2.6</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

*For BER less than $10^{-5}$
Figure 3.3.1.2-2. Channels 1 & 2 vs. Channel 3 Imbalance ($\alpha$)
demodulator units. This increase of $E_b/E_N$ from 18 to 19 dB can be attributed in a link budget to what is generally referred to as an "implementation loss" of 1 dB.

It must be noted in Figure 3.3.1.2-1 that the equal BER values for channel 1,2 and channel 3 appear at an angle which is approximately 22.2° rather than the "nominal" angle of 22.5°. This is due to the fact that we are considering each channel individually rather than treating the average rate of all three channels. If we consider the BER value averaged over all of the three channels, we obtain curves shown in Figure 3.3.1.2-3. From these curves it is evident that the minimum in average BER value does occur at the nominal value of 22.5°.

The significance of this discussion is that for application on hand, i.e., providing a capability to transmit three independent channels, one must analyze the performance of each channel individually rather than treat the performance of an 8-PSK modem on an "average" basis.

3.3.2 Tolerance to RF Circuitry Impairments

When utilizing higher order modulation techniques, such as 8-PSK, 16-PSK, 16 QAM, etc., one must pay attention to the effect of the RF circuitry impairments on the performance of the modulation technique. This, of course, is also true for the bi-phase (2-PSK) and the quadruphase (4-PSK) modulations. But, because we are introducing an 8-PSK technique here, our primary concern is the relative sensitivity of the 8-PSK technique to such impairments as compared to a 4-PSK modulation.

Our consideration, therefore, focuses specifically on such impairments as (1) amplitude distortion, (2) delay distortion, and (3) carrier phase jitter. Although, at this point in time, it is difficult to determine the exact location of these impairments in the RF chain extending from the transmitter to the receiver, the purpose of this discussion is to make the potential users of the 8-PSK aware of the effect of these impairments.
Figure 3.3.1.2-3. Effect of Imbalance on Average* BER of Channels 1, 2 and 3.
3.3.2.1 Amplitude and Delay

Figure 3.3.2.1-1 shows the power penalties due to amplitude and delay distortion for several high order modulation schemes. For both the amplitude and the delay, there are two terms: (1) a symmetrical term and (2) an asymmetrical term. These terms are referred to, respectively, as "linear" and "quadratic" terms. Also, these terms are defined by their respective coefficients, i.e., $A_1$ and $A_2$ for the amplitude response and $d_1$ and $d_2$ for the delay response.

An example of using the information in Figure 3.3.2.1-1 may be as follows. Suppose we are considering a symbol rate of 22 Mfps, the duration of each symbol is about 45 nsec. If the attenuation of the bandpass filters preceeding the demodulator is 1 dB at ±11 MHz (i.e., $A_2 = 1$ dB), the power penalty will be about 0.7 dB for the 8-PSK mode and about 0.3 dB for the 4-PSK mode. Similarly, if $d_1 = 9$ nsec then the power penalty paid for this distortion alone will be about 0.9 dB for the 8-PSK mode and about 0.2 dB for the 4-PSK mode. These penalties define an increase in $E_s/N_0$ required to maintain BER of $10^{-6}$ if each of these distortions is taken separately.

In an actual system, there will be all four distortions present, each claiming its own power penalty. Thus, from the standpoint of the RF system design, the impact of using the 8-PSK has to be reflected in the "baseline" specification (i.e., the 4-PSK spec). If this is not done, then the 8-PSK mode has to be provided with sufficient amount of additional RF power to work over the channels baselined for the 4-PSK.

3.3.2.2 Carrier Phase Jitter

The effect of carrier phase jitter on the power penalty is shown in Figure 3.3.2.2-1. For example, a phase jitter of 2 degrees RMS would result in power penalty of about 0.4 dB for the 8-PSK system and about 0.1 dB for the 4-PSK system.

The information provided in Figure 3.3.2.2-1 is useful for determining whether the phase noise characteristics of the local oscillators, synthesizers and other frequency
Figure 3.3.2.1-1. Power Penalties Due to Amplitude and Delay Distortion at BER = 10^{-6} (Ref. [3]).

Figure 3.3.2.2-1. Power Penalties Due to Carrier Phase Jitter at BER = 10^{-6} (Ref. [3]).
sources used by the Ku-band MA system have a significant impact on the power required to establish an 8-MSK link. Conversely, if the phase noise level is established by factors other than the 8-MSK operation, then the designers of the 8-PSK link must consider means within the framework of the modulator/demodulator design to reduce the effect of the phase noise on link performance. One parameter, for example, which determines the carrier phase jitter is the bandwidth of the carrier tracking loop for the 8-MSK demodulator. For an MSC application the doppler shift may not be a problem because of small relative motion between the transmitter and the receiver units. Thus, the trade off is then between making the carrier tracking loop wide enough to maintain lock despite the carrier phase noise or to make it narrow enough to minimize the effect of the thermal noise.

It must be also stated here that the power penalties indicated for the impairments are for BER of $10^{-6}$. For BER of $10^{-5}$, which is a baseline requirement for the digital TV links, these penalties will be less.

3.3.3 Implementation Philosophy

Digital implementation is recommended, wherever applicable, for the design of both the modulator and the demodulator units. Digital implementation of the modulator unit was discussed briefly in Section 3.1.2. For the demodulator design, the digital implementation will particularly be of great benefit. Figure 3.3.3-1 shows a block diagram of a digitally implemented demodulator. As shown, the baseband signals from phase detectors A, B, C, and D are converted to digital format and applied to a digital processor.

The processor performs the functions of (1) carrier tracking, (2) data demodulation, and (3) data clock recovery. For the low data rate (= 100 kps), several microprocessors may be used to achieve to desired processing speed. However, for the video data rates (=25 Mbps) special purpose, high speed processor circuitry has to be used.
4.0 CONCLUSIONS

It has been shown that the baseline 4-PSK capability of the Space Station's Ku-band MA system can be expanded for some users to provide three simultaneous digital TV channels by using 8-PSK modulation. The incorporation of the 8-PSK capability can be provided by designing what is referred to in this report as a "multi-channel" modulator/demodulator. The design philosophy is to provide the 8-PSK capability as a selectable "add-on" capability to the baseline 4-PSK mode. In this manner only those users who require the three channel capability will have to carry the additional circuitry. This circuitry may be either on a "plug in" card or in some other form of a plug-in module.

This report presented a conceptual design for a 4/8-PSK modulator/demodulator unit. The design concept described here can be used as a starting point for a more detailed engineering design. The selection of an IF frequency still remains an open issue. But, the impact of the IF frequency value will be primarily on the circuit design of the modulator/demodulator rather than on the conceptual design.

The subject of the clock recovery is not addressed in this report. We feel that it is a separate topic. However, there are techniques reported in literature which provide for a relatively easily implementable means of recovering the clock information from an 8-PSK signal [4]. For example, the technique described in [4] uses narrow-band filtering of the 8-PSK IF signal to recover the clock component which is present in the RF envelope of an 8-PSK modulated signal.
REFERENCES


APPENDIX A

DEMODULATOR FUNCTION IN THE 4-PSK MODE
A-1 INTRODUCTION

This appendix presents a simple analysis of the demodulator operation in the 4-PSK mode, which is generally referred to as the QPSK mode.

Figure A-1 shows the block of a QPSK demodulator. As shown, the demodulator consists of two orthogonal phase detectors PD-A and PD-B. For carrier error generation, the outputs of these detectors are cross-coupled via two hard limiters and baseband multipliers BM-A and BM-B.

An analysis of the method of the carrier error generation is given below.
\[ \sqrt{2S} \cos [\omega_0 t - \phi_m(t)] = \sqrt{S} [a(t) \cos \omega_0 t + b(t) \sin \omega_0 t] \]

Figure A-1. Demodulator for 4-PSK (QPSK) Mode.
To simplify analysis, we will represent the input signal to the QPSK demodulator in terms of two in-phase and quadrature components. These components are labeled $a(t)$ and $b(t)$, respectively. Figure A-2 shows the idea. The input signal to the demodulator can, therefore, be written as:

$$e_{in} = \sqrt{S} \left[ a(t) \cos \omega_0 t + b(t) \sin \omega_0 t \right], \quad (1)$$

where $a(t) = \pm 1$ and $b(t) = \pm 1$, depending on the data patterns of the respective data streams. The output of phase detector PD-A is

$$e_{PD_A} = \sqrt{S} \left[ a(t) \cos \omega_0 t + b(t) \sin \omega_0 t \right] \sqrt{2} \cos(\omega_0 t + \theta)$$

$$= \sqrt{S/2} \left[ a(t) \cos \theta - b(t) \sin \theta \right]. \quad (2a)$$

Similarly, the output of phase detector PD-B can be obtained

$$e_{PD_B} = \sqrt{S} \left[ a(t) \cos \omega_0 t + b(t) \sin \omega_0 t \right] \sqrt{2} \sin(\omega_0 t + \theta)$$

$$= \sqrt{S/2} \left[ a(t) \sin \theta - b(t) \cos \theta \right]. \quad (2b)$$

As shown in Figure A-1, the outputs of the phase detectors are, after low pass filtering, applied to baseband multipliers BM-A and BM-B. The outputs also are applied to two threshold detectors which not only determine the polarity of the appropriate signals, but also "clean up" the signals $a(t)$ and $b(t)$ making them look more or less like square waves. Thus, for a reasonably high SNR in the LPFs, we can assume that

$$\text{sgn } a(t) = \hat{a}(t),$$

$$\text{sgn } b(t) = \hat{b}(t). \quad (3)$$

Using the relationship in (3) above, we proceed to find the expressions for the outputs of the baseband multipliers BM-A and BM-B:
\[ e_{\text{BMA}} = \sqrt{S/2} \left[ a(t) \cos \theta - b(t) \sin \theta \right] \hat{b}(t) \]
\[ = \sqrt{S/2} \left[ a(t) \hat{b}(t) \cos \theta - b(t) \hat{b}(t) \sin \theta \right] \tag{4a} \]
\[ = \sqrt{S/2} \left[ a(t) \hat{b}(t) \cos \theta - \sin \theta \right] \]

and

\[ e_{\text{BMB}} = \sqrt{S/2} \left[ a(t) \sin \theta + b(t) \cos \theta \right] \hat{a}(t) \]
\[ = \sqrt{S/2} \left[ \hat{a}(t) a(t) \cos \theta + \hat{a}(t) b(t) \cos \theta \right] \tag{4b} \]
\[ = \sqrt{S/2} \left[ \sin \theta + \hat{a}(t) b(t) \cos \theta \right] . \]

It must be noted that in (4a) and (4b), we have made a valid assumption that \( a(t) \hat{a}(t) = 1 \) and \( b(t) \hat{b}(t) = 1 \). For the next step, we will make a further resonable assumption, specially that

\[ \hat{a}(t) b(t) = a(t) \hat{b}(t) . \tag{5} \]

Using this assumption we will show that the carrier tracking error out of the summer is

\[ e_\theta = e_{\text{BMB}} - e_{\text{BMA}} \]
\[ = \sqrt{2S} \sin \theta , \tag{6} \]

which for \( \theta = \text{small} \) becomes

\[ e_\theta = \sqrt{2S} \theta . \]

The tracking capability of the QPSK demodulator extends only to \( \pm 45^\circ \) because, as can be seen from Figure A-2, when \( \theta \geq 45^\circ \) the output of PD-A becomes \( b(t) \) and the output of PD-B becomes \( a(t) \). Thus, the data streams "flip."
Figure A-2. Phase Diagram for DPSK Demodulation.
APPENDIX P

CODING FOR THE SPACE STATION INFORMATION SYSTEM
1.0 INTRODUCTION

The Space Station Information System (SSIS) is intended to provide reliable information flow between SSIS users. In order to provide the quality of service required, forward error correction (FEC) and forward error detection (FED) codes will be used. Axiomatix was tasked to examine several candidate codes, and propose alternatives as deemed necessary. In this memo, we discuss the performance of the candidate block codes for the SSIS transfer frame and transfer frame header. Performance is determined by analysis or simulation, as appropriate. Details of the performance assessment are covered in this memo.

1.1 Transfer Frame Requirements

The SSIS transfer frame will consist of a header field and a data field. An error detection code may be included in the header field to provide the required header reliability, which we understand to be on the order of $10^{-12}$ bit error rate, as per [Ref 1]. In addition, an error correcting code will be added to the transfer frame to mitigate the channel errors and improve message throughput. The required output bit error rate of the decoded transfer frame depends on the grade of service: grade 1 is $10^{-12}$, grade 2 is $10^{-8}$ and grade 3 is $10^{-5}$. However, a more relevant measure of message fidelity is the overall probability of transfer frame error or header error. In terms of random bit error rate, the probability of correct message is the probability that all the constituent bits in the message are correct, and the probability of message error is given as:

$$P_{ME} = 1 - (1 - BER)^N,$$

with BER the bit error rate, $P_{ME}$ the message (codeword) error rate, and $N$ the length of the coded message, in bits. Thus, for a 64 bit transfer frame header, a bit error rate of $10^{-12}$
corresponds to a header error rate of $6.4 \times 10^{-11}$, and for a 2040 bit transfer frame codeword, a bit error rate of $10^{-12}$ corresponds to a frame codeword error rate of $2 \times 10^{-9}$. If the transfer frame is encoded using a Reed-Solomon code, as proposed in [Ref 2], and error correction is performed, the resultant output will either contain no errors, or will contain several bursts of errors since the received sequence will be transformed to a codeword differing in at least 33 symbols of 8 bits each. The point behind the preceding discussion is that average bit error rate out is not the appropriate statistic to specify, but rather the average frame error rate should be considered. In the following discussion, the error detection and correction performance of the codes will be presented in terms of frame or frame header error rate, as the transformation to bit error rate is somewhat of an artifact.

1.2 General Code Consideration

We have examined the performance of the two codes proposed in [Ref 2]. The performance of the (255, 223) Reed-Solomon code proposed for transfer frame error correction was investigated using analytical techniques. The codeword weight structure of Reed-Solomon codes is well known, and the message error rate and throughput can be calculated explicitly, based on the channel symbol error rate. At this point, we need to make a distinction between channel symbol error rate and channel bit error rate. The weight structure of the Reed-Solomon codes is based on symbols, with each non-zero symbol consisting of one or more non-zero bits. Thus, the weights given by the formula of Section 2 are independent of the number of non-zero bits, so the weight in bits cannot be derived from this result. As a consequence, the probability of undetected error as a function of bit error rate, rather than symbol error rate, cannot be derived in closed form from the symbol weight structure. Even though symbols for the code can be reconstructed from bits transmitted over a binary channel, the codeword errors induced by bit errors have a different probability measure than the same errors induced by symbol errors. That is, in an M-ary symbol channel, with $n = \log_2 M$ bits, a received sequence with $w$ errors has
maximum probability of \( \left( \frac{1}{2^n - 1} \right)^w \left( 1 - \frac{1}{2^n - 1} \right)^{N-w} \) in a code of length N. However, the same codeword, if it were to consist of symbols with one bit error each, would have a maximum probability of \( \left( \frac{1}{n} \right)^w \left( 1 - \frac{1}{n} \right)^{N-w} \). The latter probability is considerably larger than the former, and the potential for undetected errors using a binary channel could be higher than with a non-binary channel using the same Reed-Solomon code. Simulation with a shorter code, discussed in Section 3, indicates that there are not enough codewords with low binary weight symbols to cause this to be a problem for the Reed-Solomon code tested. The (255,223) code proposed for the transfer frame has enough distance, even after correcting sixteen errors, to provide a probability of undetected error less than \( 10^{-13} \) using a non-binary channel. However, simulation will probably be needed to verify that this code will perform as well with a binary channel. In fact, a rather lengthy simulation will be required to verify a \( 10^{-13} \) error rate, but it will be worthwhile if this one code can provide both error correction and error detection with the required probability of false message. The simulation may be expedited by testing codewords with a low binary weight. We discuss this issue in more detail in Section 2.

The frame header code candidates are examined using a simulation, thereby making it possible to verify the code performance with a binary channel. Since the error rates involved are higher, this simulation is possible on a personal computer. We have run an extensive simulation involving three potential header codes, a Hamming code, a binary BCH code, and a Reed-Solomon Code. All three codes are 64 bits long with 16 check bits, which gives an undetected error rate bound of \( 2^{-16} \), or \( 1.5 \times 10^{-5} \) at an input error rate of 0.5. Results of this simulation are discussed in Section 3.
2.0 TRANSFER FRAME ERROR CORRECTION CODE

We have evaluated the performance of the (255,223) 8-bit per symbol Reed-Solomon code proposed by Miller and Morakis [Ref 2]. Results from this paper, reproduced as Figure 2.0-1, show a probability of undetected bit error exceeding $10^{-3}$ at low signal-to-noise ratio. We believe that these results are based on a weak upper bound, or based on a maximum likelihood decoding algorithm, as our results indicate a probability of undetected error of less than $10^{-13}$ at all signal-to-noise ratios for a non-binary channel, and we will argue that the same result may apply to a binary channel. Our results assume that we correct a maximum of 16 errors, the guaranteed capability of the code.

We examine the error detection performance of the code using two techniques. First, we calculate the total number of codewords in the received signal space. Then, assuming we are going to correct a maximum of 16 errors, we calculate the number of codeword neighbors within distance 16. An erroneous codeword will be accepted if more than 16 errors occur, and the received sequence lands within 16 symbols of another codeword, which we call a neighbor. Thus, under the condition that landing on a codeword or a neighbor is no more or less likely than landing on any other possible received sequence at the same distance, the probability of error is upper bounded by the ratio of codewords and nearest neighbors to the total possible number of received sequences.

We can calculate the number of codewords in an (N,k) code over GF(q) as $q^k$, which in this case is $256^{223}$. The number of sequences within distance 16 of any given codeword is equal to the number of sequences of weight less than 17, which is

$$\sum_{i=1}^{16} \binom{N}{i}(q-1)^i = .302 \times 10^{64}$$

for the code in question. The total number of sequences is $q^N = 256^{255}$. Thus, the ratio of codewords and neighbors to the total calculates out to $0.26 \times 10^{-13}$. This is the worst case
probability of landing within 16 symbols of another codeword.

A more rigorous expression which relates undetected codeword error to channel error rate can be derived based on a formula from Forney [Ref 3]. The number $N_{d,w}$ of codewords of weight $w$ for a code of minimum distance $d$ is

$$N_{d,w} = \binom{N}{w} (q-1) \sum_{i=1}^{w-d} (-1)^i \binom{w-1}{i} q^{w-d-i},$$

and the probability of error, i.e., the probability of receiving a sequence within distance 16 of another codeword is given as

$$P_e = \sum_{w=d}^{N} \sum_{k=0}^{16} \sum_{i=0}^{k} \sum_{\ell=0}^{m} N_w \times \frac{(N-w)!w!(q-1)^{k-w-i-\ell}(q-2)^i p^{w+2\ell+i-k} (1-p)^{N-w-2\ell-i+k}}{!(N-w-\ell)!i!(k-i-\ell)! (w-k+\ell)!}$$

with $m = \min (k-i, N-w)$, and $p$ the channel symbol error rate. This expression is corrected from [Ref 3], which has an error in the upper limit of the inner sum. This expression was evaluated using double precision Fortran, and the results are plotted in Figure 2.0-2. Note that, as expected, the maximum undetected error rate is equal to $0.26 \times 10^{-13}$.

The use of a decoder that corrects a fixed maximum number of errors, 16 in this case, will result in rejection of transfer frames with more than 16 errors. The probability of accepting a correct message, which is the probability of 16 or fewer errors, is a function of the channel error rate. The correct message rate is plotted in Figure 2.0-3. The use of a decoder that corrects to some codeword regardless of the number of errors will result in a slightly higher probability of accepting a correct message since there are some error patterns of 17 or greater that will still be closer to the true codeword than any other codeword. However, the probability of undetected error goes to one as the channel error rate deteriorates since all detection capability is lost. Since the frame header code does not provide the required error rate, as we will show in the next section, it would be advisable to
REED-SOLOMON (255,223) 16-ERROR CORRECTION CODE

FIGURE 2.0-2
REED-SOLOMON (255,223) 16-ERROR CORRECTION CODE

FIGURE 2.0-3
use algebraic decoding with a maximum error correction of 16 symbols rather than maximum likelihood decoding with arbitrary error correction.

2.1 Reed-Solomon Code Performance over a Binary Channel

The previous results cover Reed-Solomon code performance over a non-binary channel, or a channel with equi-probable symbol errors, as depicted in Figure 2.0-2. The worst case error detection performance using this channel can be heuristically bounded by noting that, regardless of the error pattern affecting the k information symbols, the errors affecting the N-k check symbols must cause perfect agreement between every computed check symbol and every received check symbol. Note that with a Reed-Solomon code, any change in one information symbol affects each and every computed check symbol. The worst case probability of receiving a check symbol that agrees with an erroneous computed check symbol is \( P_e / (q-1) \), which is less than \((q-1)^{-1}\). The probability that all check symbols agree is \((q-1)^{-(N-k)}\) with error detection only, and no error correction. With \( q = 256 \) and \( N-k = 32 \), this gives a \( P_e < 10^{-77} \).

By comparison, with a binary channel, low binary weight error patterns are more likely than error patterns with a large number of bit changes. The concern is that a codeword differing from the transmitted codeword by \( N-k+1 \) symbols may only differ by \( N-k+1 \) bits, one bit per symbol. In a manner analogous to the non-binary channel, we can calculate the probability of match for a set of \( N-k \) check symbols consisting of \( n \) bits each, and each with one bit error. The probability of one check symbol matching is \( pq^{n-1} \) with one bit error in the symbol. This is maximized with \( p = \frac{1}{n} \), so that the probability of \( N-k \) check symbols matching with one error each is \( P_e \leq \left( \frac{1}{n} \right)^{N-k} \left( 1 - \frac{1}{n} \right)^{(n-1)(N-k)} \). For our example, this is \( P_e \leq \left( \frac{1}{8} \right)^{32} \cdot \left( \frac{7}{8} \right)^{7x32} = 10^{-42} \) for one specific sequence of check symbols given that the appropriate information symbols have been received. The overall probability of error is much less since the overall probability of receiving the information
symbols as well as the check symbols must be factored in. The question that we can’t answer at this point is how many low binary weight codewords exist relative to the total number of codewords. In all likelihood, the density of binary weight check sequences is uniform for a given binary weight of the information sequence, in which case we can argue that the error detection performance over a binary channel is equivalent to the performance over a non-binary channel. Recall that a Reed-Solomon code has the property that a change in any one information symbol changes each and every check symbol. Thus, each check symbol can be written as a linear combination of the information symbols as shown below

\[
C_0 = \alpha_{0,0} I_0 + \alpha_{0,1} I_1 + \cdots + \alpha_{0,k-1} I_{k-1}
\]

\[
C_1 = \alpha_{1,0} I_0 + \alpha_{1,1} I_1 + \cdots + \alpha_{1,k-1} I_{k-1}
\]

\[
\vdots
\]

\[
C_{31} = \alpha_{31,0} I_0 + \alpha_{31,1} I_1 + \cdots + \alpha_{31,k-1} I_{k-1}
\]

with all the coefficients \( \alpha_{i,j} \) non-zero. Now, the next step is to argue that is a column of the coefficient matrix of the \( \alpha \)'s is not a constant, each change of an information symbol will result in every check symbol changing by a different amount corresponding to a different value of the coefficient. For example, if the all-zero codeword is transmitted and one information symbol is received in error, all the check symbols will be non-zero. At most eight can have binary weight one if all the coefficients in one column are unique, and the remaining check symbols have minimum binary weight two. Thus, under this assumption, the minimum binary weight non-zero codeword is \( 1 + 8 + 2 \times 24 = 57 \). In order to pursue this, the coefficient matrix for a specific code needs to be generated, and the properties examined. Looking at the code from this perspective, however, intimates that a change in one or more information symbols "randomizes" the check symbol sequence.
To lend some credence to these arguments, we examine the performance of a Reed-Solomon code in the next section, and compare it to a binary BCH code and a Hamming code of the same rate. The simulation results will show that the Reed-Solomon code outperforms the other two. While we can't run a full-up simulation of the (255,223) code at all error rates, we can examine areas of concern. That is, we can induce specific numbers of errors, 17, 18, and so on, to bias the simulation to a high error rate and accelerate the statistical reliability of the results.

We feel that this effort will be justified since this code has the potential for simultaneously satisfying both the error correction desired and the false message requirements.

3.0 FRAME HEADER SIMULATION RESULTS

A frame header code to provide protection against acceptance of erroneous headers has been prepared. [Ref 1] specifies a header BER of $10^{-12}$. This bit error rate is not possible at all input error rates using the candidate error detection code proposed. The code proposed in [Ref 2] is a (64,48) binary Hamming code. In fact, the best any code with 16 check bits can do is guarantee an error rate of $2^{-16}$ unless the input, or channel, error rate is small. Fortunately, the results of section 2 indicate that this BER requirement can be met by the channel code. However, should a header code be required, we have simulated the performance of the proposed Hamming code as well as a comparable binary BCH code and a Reed-Solomon code. All codes were tested with the same binary error pattern to provide consistency.

The Hamming code has a generator polynomial given as

$$g(x) = 1 + x^5 + x^{12} + x^{16}.$$  

The BCH code had a generator polynomial given as

$$g(x) = (1 + x^2 + x^3 + x^4 + x^8) (1 + x + x^2 + x^4 + x^5 + x^6 + x^8) = 1 + x + x^5 + x^6 + x^8 + x^9 + x^{10} + x^{11} + x^{13} + x^{14} + x^{16}.$$  

The Reed-Solomon code check symbols consist of the first three symbols, $C_0$, $C_1$, and $C_2$, generated by constraining the first three syndrome equations to zero. The fourth symbol is an overall parity check on the codeword. Header error rates for these three codewords are plotted in Figure 3.0-1. Ultimately, the Reed-Solomon code outperforms the other two.

A listing of the frame header simulation follows. A copy of this program was given to LOCKHEED personnel at JSC for their use. It compiles under LAHEY F77L FORTRAN using a PC with the 8087 coprocessor.

[Ref 1] "Space Station Specification," Section 4.3.2.2, January 5, 1987
HEADER CODE PERFORMANCE

![Graph showing the performance of different encoding algorithms (Hamming, BCH, R-S) for different BER inputs. The x-axis represents BER in, and the y-axis represents header error rate. The graph illustrates the varying performance of each algorithm across different BER inputs.]

FIGURE 3.0-1
PROGRAM RS
INTEGER*2 IC(O:I5),IFR,IMUL(O:I5),ISUM,IETAR(O:3)
DIMENSION IETAB(0:31)

* Hamming generator
DATA IFH/Z'10210000'/
* Reed-Solomon symbol field generator polynomial
DATA IFR/Z'13'/
* BCH generator
DATA IFB/Z'6F630000'/

* 8087 Initialization
CALL INVALOP(I2)
OPEN(2,FILE="LPT1")

* Initialize PR generator
CALL DRANSET
IETAB(0)=1
DO 10 I=1,31
10 CONTINUE

10 IETAR(0)=1
DO 101 I=1,3
101 IETAR(I)=2*IETAR(I-1)

IMUL is GF(16) multiplication table
IMUL(0)=0
IMUL(1)=2
DO 15 I=2,15
15 IMUL(I)=I*2

IEOR is 8087 XOR
IF (IMUL(I).GE.16) IMUL(I)=IEOR(IMUL(I),IFR)

* Print BER on screen @ 10K, on printer @ 100k cwords
DO 21 I=1,10
DO 20 IPR=I,10000
20 IC(J)=0

* Input error counter
BTMP=0

* Clear BCH input words—Note B is BCH, H is Hamming
IR1B=0
IROB=0

* Clear Hamming input words
IR1H=0
IROH=0

* Clear decoder syndrome registers (Ref. pg. 150 Vol I Peterson)
ICDH=0
ICDB=0
I1=0

* Generate first 32 input bits packed into IC and IR1B
DO 50 I2=0,7
DO 60 I3=0,3
* Generate PR#
  Y=DRAN(I.)
* Y=RND()
  IF(Y.LE.PE) THEN
  * Set bit to 1 if PR# less than input error rate
  IC(I2)=IOR(IC(I2),IETAR(I3))
  BTMP=BTMP+1
  IROB=IOR(IROB,IETAB(I1))
  ENDIF
  II=II+1
60  CONTINUE
50  CONTINUE
  II=0
* Generate second 32 input bits
  DO 501 I2=8,15
  DO 601 I3=0,3
  Y=DRAN(I.)
  IF(Y.LE.PE) THEN
  IC(I2)=IOR(IC(I2),IETAR(I3))
  BTMP=BTMP+1
  IROB=IOR(IROB,IETAB(I1))
  ENDIF
  II=II+1
501  CONTINUE
601  CONTINUE
  * Copy BCH input to Hamming input
  IRIH=IR1B
  IROH=IROB
  * Increment cword counter
  CWCNT=CWCNT+1.
  * Skip if no input errors
  IF(BTMP.EQ.O) GOTO 20
  BERR=BERR+BTMP
  DO 110 I6=0,63
  * Sign bits hold current bit to be processed
  * XOR syndrome,input for BCH
  IFLGB=IEOR(ICDB,IR1B)
  ICDB=ISHFT(ICDB,IONE)
  * 64-bit left shift
  I1B=ISHFT(I1B,IONE)
  IF(IROB.LT.O) I1B=IOR(I1B,IONE)
  IROB=ISHFT(IROB,IONE)
  * Feedback g(x) if high order bit is 1
  * Next do Hamming
  IF(IFLGB.LT.O) ICDB=IEOR(ICDB,IFB)
  IFLGH=IEOR(ICDH,IR1H)
  ICDH=ISHFT(ICDH,IONE)
  I1H=ISHFT(I1H,IONE)
  IF(IROH.LT.O) I1H=IOR(I1H,IONE)
  IROH=ISHFT(IROH,IONE)
  IF(IFLGH.LT.O) ICDH=IEOR(ICDH,IFH)
110  CONTINUE
  * Increment error count if syndrome not zero
  IF (ICDB.EQ.O) THEN
    CWEB=CWEB+I
  ENDIF
  IF (ICDH.EQ.O) THEN
    CWEH=CWEH+I
  ENDIF
  * R-S decoder
1004  ISUM=0
* First do overall parity check
  DO 80 I5=0,15
  80 ISUM=IEOR(ISUM,IC(I5))
* Detect error if nonzero, i.e. not UNDETECTED error
  IF(ISUM.NE.0) GOTO 20
* Calc first syndrome=sum(IsubI4*Alpha**I4)
  ISUM=IC(O)
  DO 70 I4=I,14
  ISUM=IMUL(ISUM)
  ISUM=IEOR(ISUM,IC(I4))
  70 CONTINUE
* Detect error if nonzero
  IF(ISUM.NE.0) GOTO 20
  ISUM=IC(O)
* Second syndrome=sum(IsubI6*Alpha**(2*I6))
  DO 90 I6=I,14
  ISUM=IMUL(ISUM)
  ISUM=IMUL(ISUM)
  ISUM=IEOR(ISUM,IC(I6))
  90 CONTINUE
* Detect error if nonzero
  IF(ISUM.NE.0) GOTO 20
  ISUM=IC(O)
* Third syndrome
  DO 100 I7=I,14
  ISUM=IMUL(ISUM)
  ISUM=IMUL(ISUM)
  ISUM=IMUL(ISUM)
  ISUM=IEOR(ISUM,IC(I7))
  100 CONTINUE
* If all syndromes zero, we have undetected error, inc count
  IF (ISUM.EQ.0) THEN
    CWER=CWER+1
  ENDIF
  CONTINUE
* Calc error rates, PB is check on input rate
  CWOUTB=CWEB/CWCNT
  CWOUTH=CWEH/CWCNT
  PB=BERR/CWCNT/64
  CWOUTR=CWER/CWCNT
  WRITE(*,*) PB,CWCNT,CWOUTH,CWOUTB,CWOUTR
  21 CONTINUE
  WRITE(2,*) PB,CWCNT,CWOUTH,CWOUTB,CWOUTR
  GOTO 30
END

* Big mother PR# generator
FUNCTION DRAN(X)
DOUBLE PRECISION M,A,C,RM,Y,XX
DIMENSION RANT(97)
J=I.DO+(97.DO_Y)/M
Y=RANT(J)
DRAN=Y_RM
XX=DMOD(A*X+C,M)
RANT(J)=XX
RETURN

* Initialization for PR# gen.
ENTRY DRANSET
DRANSET=I
M=1771875.
A=2416.
C=374441.
REM=1.DO/M
XX=DMOD(A*12345.,M)
DO 10,I=1,97
XX=DMOD(XX*A+C,M)
RANT(I)=XX
CONTINUE
XX=DMOD(XX*A+C,M)
Y=XX
RETURN
END
APPENDIX Q

SSIS HEADER CODE
Warner Miller and Henry Chen recently sent me some new material on the use of a binary Kasami code for burst error control with the SSIS frame header. I understand that there is a CCSDS meeting next week (6/22), and that this is one of the topics of consideration. I have a few quick comments prior to a more detailed analysis. The assumptions made by Goddard regarding the error rate into the (85,64) binary code are:

- Probability of burst length greater than 10 bits is zero.
- Input error rate less than $10^{-5}$.

With these assumptions, they bound the probability of header error as the probability of 2 or more channel errors with no burst errors, or 1 channel error with a burst of length 10 or less. This is certainly a conservative bound, given the assumption. We might want to take a harder look at the burst error statistics, however. A related issue is the performance of the error trapping decoder. Historically (if 20 years in the past can be considered history) the error trapping decoder was considered because of its relative simplicity. However, modern high speed processors allow us to consider the use of other decoding techniques. The reason for bringing this up is that I don't know what the residual error detection capability is with this code in the event that a burst length of 11 or greater occurs, or if it is overloaded with random errors.
I took a quick look at an alternate, a (17,13) Reed Solomon code with 5-bit symbols. This code is 85 bits long, with 20 check bits, 64 address bits and 1 "freebie." It can correct bursts in the range of 6 to 10 bits, with six guaranteed. In addition, the residual error detection capability is estimated to be as follows:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>BER\text{IN}</th>
<th>P_{e,\text{header}}</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>0.5</td>
<td>0.125</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.1</td>
<td>0.25 x 10^{-1}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.05</td>
<td>0.50 x 10^{-2}</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>0.01</td>
<td>0.59 x 10^{-4}</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

A (19,13) Reed-Solomon code, with a length of 95 bits, can correct bursts in the range of 11 to 15 bits, with 11 guaranteed. The residual error detection capability is also better.

I'll call you Monday and we can discuss pursuing this further.
APPENDIX R

SSIS SM CODES
1.0 INTRODUCTION

Axiomatix has implemented a nominal rate 1/2 (8 data rows + 8 check rows) SM-8 decoder in order to verify the Schilling/Manela results. This memo describes details of the specific algorithm implemented. We are getting close to the results claimed by Manela in his thesis for the SM-8 code, and in fact, one variation of the decoding algorithm is exceeding his results. The outstanding question is, of course, the complexity of the hardware implementation vis-a-vis a Reed-Solomon code of comparable performance.

The Axiomatix decoder has a checkered history; the initial decoder had performance several orders of magnitude worse than the Manela results. However, after working with the codes, and gleaning incidental pieces of information from David Manela and Don Schilling, we were able to approach, but not duplicate, their results. We have tried several sets of parity check slopes, which are not necessarily optimum. Schilling and Manela are not willing to provide us with the "optimum" slopes, but it appears that we are close enough for practical purposes.

2.0 SM-8 CODE CHARACTERISTICS

The specific code implemented is depicted in Figure 2.0-1. The maximum block size is limited by the maximum allowable storage space of the Fortran compiler object
FIGURE 2.0.1. SM-8 CODE BLOCK INCLUDING EXTRA PARITY
modules, 64 K. The code of Figure 2.0-1 has parity slopes of 1/0, 1/1, 1/2,..., 1/7. A code with slopes consisting of the reciprocal of prime numbers was also implemented. The code performance is close to the 1/n slope code, but the block size is necessarily shorter due to the steeper slope. The nominal code rate is 1/2, but the flush bits lower the code rate by a significant factor. The number of flush bits can be calculated as follows: The slope 1/0 parity line requires no flush bits, the slope 1/1 requires 7 flush bits, the 1/2 slope requires 14 flush bits, and the 1/n slope requires 7n flush bits. Thus, the total number of flush bits is

\[ F = \sum_{i=1}^{n} 7 \cdot i = 7 \cdot \frac{(n + 1)n}{2} = 196 \text{ bits} \]

The overall code rate for the 1/n code is \( R = \frac{2048}{4096 + 196} = 0.477 \)

The rate of the prime number code is \( \frac{1376}{2752 + 294} = 0.45 \)

One of the ARQ strategies described in the next section lowers the effective code rate. The code rate loss is, of course, a function of input error rate, as the number of retransmissions increases over the noisy channel.

3.0 SM-8 DECODER IMPLEMENTATION

Two variations of an SM-8 decoder have been implemented. The basic decoder decodes a block of data using a single "pass," while the ARQ version decodes a block, checks the cumulative syndrome register against a threshold, and makes an additional pass if any cell is above the threshold. This variation allows us to use a lower threshold and pick up more errors. The number of passes must be limited, both to prevent error propagation, and to prevent infinite decoder loops.

The simulation uses a pseudo-random number (PRN) generator which computes a uniformly distributed PRN, compares the number with the selected input error rate, and
stores a 1 in those bits which have a PRN less than the input error rate. A block diagram of the simulation is shown in Figure 3.0-1. Referencing this figure, one of eight arrays, R1 through R8, are dedicated to each of the eight parity lines. If a parity line has odd parity, all bits on the diagonal line of the appropriate array are set to one. After all array have been set, the contents of each array are added, with the result stored in array ICNT. For example, a single error at row J, column I in the information block will result in 1's being stored at all diagonals of R1 through R8 that intersect at I, J. Thus ICNT (J,I) will contain an 8 after all the R arrays are added together.

The cell corrections are made from bottom (Row 8) to top (Row 1), and the threshold level for correction is initially set to 8, then 7, and so on. Using a higher threshold first, as per a hint by David Manela, corrects the most likely (single) errors first. This strategy gives a significant improvement in decoder performance. Figure 3.0-2, a reproduction of a plot from the Manela thesis, shown the results of the Axiomatix simulation relative to the Manela results.

3.1 Modified SM-8 Decoder

In the course of trying to reconcile the Axiomatix results with the published SM-8 results, a variation of the Manela decoder was implemented. The basic decoding algorithm is unchanged, but the threshold is lowered to a value of 4. If no other changes were made, this would increase the error rate due to a propagation effect. However, once the block is initially decoded, we iterate on the block. That is, the cumulative weights are recomputed, and the decoding process repeats. This procedure can lead to an infinite loop at low SNR, so a maximum count of 2 iteration per block is imposed. If, after two iterations some cells still contain values equal to or greater than 4, a retransmission is requested. This strategy reduces the code rate, but is a very effective error detection strategy. At an input error rate of 0.02, the unmodified decoder has an output error rate of $3.2 \times 10^{-6}$, while the modified decoder has an error rate of $1 \times 10^{-7}$. The net code rate is lowered by a factor of 0.98, equivalent to a loss of 0.07 dB.
INITIALIZE

READ INPUT ERROR RATE, PIN

GENERATE BLOCK OF PRN'S, ADD ERRORS TO CHANNEL BITS

SET THRESHOLD = 8

CALCULATE PARITY FOR FIRST PARITY LINE. SET ALL BITS OF ARRAY R1 TO 1 THAT HAVE ODD PARITY

CALCULATE PARITY FOR SECOND PARITY LINE. SET ALL BITS OF ARRAY R2 TO 1 THAT HAVE ODD PARITY

REPEAT FOR R3 THROUGH R8

ADD ARRAY R1 THROUGH R8 STORE SUM IN ARRAY ICNT

COMPARE CONTENTS OF ARRAY ICNT WITH THRESHOLD. IF GREATER THAN OR EQUAL TO THRESHOLD, INVERT INFORMATION BIT, TEST CONTENTS OF ARRAYS R1 THROUGH R8

IF R1 THROUGH R8 CONTAIN A 1, SUBTRACT 1 FROM ICNT ALONG APPROPRIATE PARITY LINE, OTHERWISE ADD 1. TOGGLE BITS ALONG PARITY LINES IN R1 THROUGH R8

REDUCE THRESHOLD BY 1

YES

IS THRESHOLD GREATER THAN 4

NO

INCREMENT ERROR COUNTER FOR EACH INFORMATION BIT EQUAL TO 1

RESUME SIMULATION

FIGURE 3.0-1
FIGURE 3.0-2. AXIOMATIX SIMULATION RESULTS.

(FIGURE 3.2-5 $P(\text{out})$ versus $P(\text{in})$ $R=1/2$)
APPENDIX S

A CRITIQUE OF THE SCHILLING-MANELA CODES
Axiomatix has been evaluating the performance of a subset of the SM codes presented in Dr. Manela's thesis (Ref. 1). In addition, we have reviewed a critique of the thesis by Lin and Costello (Ref. 2) provided by NASA/JSC. In general, we agree with the Lin and Costello review of the codes: the codes are threshold decodable convolutional codes, and the decoding complexity engendered by the iterative decoding technique can cause throughput delay. One advantage claimed for the code proposed for Space Station use, the partially autoconcatenated (PASM) code, is the ARQ strategy permitting transmission of additional parity only. However, this is not unique to the SM codes. Any systematic code can be re-decoded with additional transmitted parity bits. This technique is of dubious advantage in decoding a high rate code as proposed for the Space Station. For example, a rate 0.9 code will, on the average, have 9 out of 10 errors in the information bits. Thus, it may be more efficient to retransmit the whole block rather than just parity for high rate codes. This is particularly true considering that each additional parity line has a shallower slope than the prior line, and the overall rate decreases faster than just the ratio of data rows to the total number of rows.

The probabilistic nature of the decoding process was evidenced in the Axiomatix implementation of the decoder. Each cell of the composite matrix is compared with a
threshold. In the case of the SM-8 code, the threshold starts at 8, since this would be induced by a single error (single errors are more likely than double errors, and so on). If the cell equals the threshold, the appropriate input bit is toggled, and all affected cells are recomputed. This process repeats for each cell. Next, the threshold is lowered to 7 and the whole threshold comparison repeats. Note that the decoding rate will vary as a function of the error patterns. Two widely separated errors will cause two recomputations at the threshold = 8 level, whereas two errors affecting the same composite cell will require only 1 recomputation at the threshold = 7 level. This means that the computational speed of the decoder must be fast enough to handle worst-case error patterns, or data will either be lost or output out-of-order.

The actual computational requirements of the decoder will be governed by a probability distribution function which is a function of channel noise, much like the probability of buffer overflow of a sequential decoder. That is, the probability of computational failure will increase as channel noise increases, and the decoder clock rate must be set fast enough to provide an acceptably low probability of failure. The nature of the computational distribution function may have to be estimated using simulations, since the iterative nature of the decoding process is not deterministic.

The Axiomatix implementation of the proposed rate 0.9 PASM code has been frustrated by the FORTRAN compiler 64K byte memory constraint. If we were to use the same programming shortcuts that allowed us to rapidly implement the SM-8 code, the memory requirement for a single composite matrix would exceed this limit. In lieu of using straightforward programming techniques, we would have to invoke complex bit shuffling algorithm which will slow down the decoder (and the programmer). An alternative is to program the decoder in "C" which is more suitable for this type of problem, but which will cause a delay due to our "learning curve" with the C language, or tie into the TCD VAX with a modem and remote terminal.
In conclusion, barring any new revelations, the SM codes do not appear to offer any significant advantage over other threshold decodable convolutional codes, and the dynamic behavior of the decoder may preclude its use over high-speed links. The proposed (255,223) Reed-Solomon code can provide the required error protection. This code can correct a minimum of 16 bit errors per block, with a residual error detection capability guaranteeing a probability of undetected error less then $10^{-13}$. Since the chip set exists to implement this decoder, we feel that it is logical to use the Reed-Solomon code rather than the less mature SM code. On the positive side, the algorithm is simple and easy to understand; this class of codes presents an excellent introduction to multiple error correcting codes without resorting to the use of higher order algebraic fields and could well serve as a first example in a coding course.

REFERENCES


Ref 2. "Review of 'A New Class of Forward Error Correcting Codes for Burst and Random Errors,'" Lin and Costello, Private Correspondence.
APPENDIX T

WANDERER TRACKER PERFORMANCE GOALS
1.0 INTRODUCTION

This memo addresses two of the significant concerns regarding candidate systems to detect wandering behavior and track a wanderer: cost and effectiveness. We feel that minimum cost can be attained by using devices based wholly or predominantly on commercial products and technology wherever possible. The use of a low cost intrusion alarm as part of the perimeter detection system is discussed in a subsequent paragraph. Effective wanderer tracking forces us to consider conflicting requirements, for example, long range implies high power transmitters, which in turn may require excessive battery power and short battery life. Again, some suggested tradeoffs and possible solutions are discussed in subsequent paragraphs.

2.0 TECHNICAL CONSIDERATION FOR EFFECTIVE WANDERER TRACKING

The following discussion assumes that a potential wanderer will be equipped with a radio-frequency transmitter, a perimeter alarm will detect the presence (or absence) of the
RF signal, and tracking capability will be provided by RF direction finding. Topics considered include:

- Minimization of battery power requirements
- Directionality of signal
- Signal penetration of structures
- Range
- Available technology

The first topic, minimization of power, has lead us to consider a system with a wanderer's transmitter in the "normally off" condition. With this system, depicted in Figure 2.0-1, the transmitter is held in the off state by the presence of an acoustic or electronic field provided, for example, by a commercial intrusion alarm. Such alarm systems can be purchased for under $200 per unit (Ref. 1) and provide an inexpensive source of microwave or acoustic energy. A receiver on the wanderers unit detects the presence of the energy to suppress the wearers transmitter. The wearers unit can also be equipped with a "dead-mans" switch which will trigger the transmitter if the unit is removed by the wanderer. Battery life should be extended substantially, since power is only needed for the receiver during periods of normal activity. This system has the added advantage that only a single, inexpensive transmitter is needed for each area to be monitored, regardless of the number of doors and windows, thus eliminating antennas, loops, or receivers at each portal. The same system can be used to monitor outdoor activity by careful placement of transmitters.

The wearer units can be tested by periodically shutting down the area transmitters. The system can be considered fail-safe, since the failure of any component of the system can be detected automatically. Failure of an area transmitter will cause all wearer units to
FIGURE 2.0-1
respond, failure of one wearer unit (assuming each has a unique ID) will be evident during periodic checkout, as will failure of the base receiver when all units fail to respond during checkout. However, to distinguish individual wearer units during checkout, we must use a modulation which cannot be jammed by alternate wearers. A baseline modulation for consideration is a pulse-position modulator with time division multiplex pulse timing unique to each wearer. The wearer-unique code provides identification as well as low mutual interference.

In addition to the three components discussed, the energy source, the wearer unit and the base receiver, a fourth component is needed for direction finding. For simplicity, we assume the direction finding unit is not required to identify a specific wearer unit once identification is made at the base receiver, but rather it is sufficient to track the energy of the wearer unit. Thus, the portable unit can be considerably simplified. At this point we need to examine another tradeoff area, that of the frequency band utilized by the wearer's unit. As depicted in Figure 2.0-2; two types of direction finding can be employed: (1) locate peak of pattern and (2) locate null of pattern. The requirement for a portable, hand-held receiver dictates that a horn antenna at EHF be used for the peak-of-pattern method, while a loop or ferrite antenna can be used at HF to locate with a null-of-pattern. Direction finding on a null is much less satisfactory for an inexperienced operator, particularly with the broad nulls at HF using a loop or ferrite. In addition, it is difficult to distinguish the 180° directional ambiguity, as shown in Figure 2.0-2; at EHF, a highly directional beam can be formed with a moderately sized antenna. Thus, it would seem that frequencies at K_a band and above would be prime candidates for the wanderer system if the low cost technology is available. However, these frequencies are easily blocked by structures and foliage, whereas HF energy is not attenuated as readily by obstacles. A hybrid approach would be
WANDERER'S UNIT

PORTABLE UNIT

FIGURE 2.0-2
to use a dual frequency system with coarse direction finding at HF in the presence of obstacles, and accurate direction finding at EHF. One frequency band could be implemented as a simple CW source, with modulation on the other band to provide the wearer ID. The complexity of the wearer unit would be slightly increased, with the worst impact on the portable direction-finding receiver which would probably need to accommodate both peak and null detection capability.

2.1 Wearer Identification

The problem of discriminating between different wanderers is exacerbated when, during self test, all wearer units are turned on as the area transmitter is turned off. Some form of orthogonal modulation must be used to prevent mutual interference, overloading of the area receiver's front end, and suppression of weak signals from more distant wearers.

An example of a modulation scheme with a relatively simple demodulation, not requiring sophisticated spread spectrum demodulation or correlation receivers, would have the wearer units time synchronized to the area receiver clock. This system is depicted in Figure 2.1-1. Pulses from the area transmitter periodically reset counters in the wearer units and in the area receiver. Each wearer unit clock then counts to a preset value, $T_i$, different for each unit, before commencing transmission of alarm pulses. The minimum counter period of each wearer unit is greater than the reset pulse period $T_r$ from the area transmitter, thus preventing transmission by wearer units within range of the area transmitter. Once activated, the wearer units transmit at a pulse interval $T_p$. The stability of the free-running oscillator in the wearer unit need only be good enough to provide adequate time to identify the unit by preventing the pulse epochs from drifting into the time slot.
FIGURE 2.1-1
corresponding to another wearer. For example, a system capable of accommodating 50 wearer units might have the following parameters:

- Pulse duration : 10 μsec
- Guard time : 10 μsec
- Repetition : 1 KHz
- Number of time slots : 50

If we assume that the receiver can tolerate a 5 μsec drift (1/2 a guard time), and 1 second (1 thousand pulses) is an adequate time to identify a wanderer, then the transmitter stability requirement is about $5 \times 10^{-6}$, which is not difficult to achieve.

Installation having more than one area transmitter will require that the transmitters be synchronized, since it is assumed that only one area receiver will be needed. The transmitters can be hardwired together, or the synchronization signal can be superimposed on the AC powerline. Note that simplification can be effected for small installations not requiring wearer identification, but the economy of mass production would probably dictate a common wearer unit, whether or not identification is desired.

### 3.0 CONCLUSIONS

We have proposed a candidate wanderer tracking system with features which provide fail-safe operation, minimizes battery power requirements, and can provide good tracking capability. A more detailed investigation will provide insight into the cost effectiveness of considering a dual-band wearer unit or whether a compromise single frequency system would provide a better cost/performance ratio.
APPENDIX  U

SIMULATION MODELS FOR OPTICAL COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS ANALYSIS
SIMULATION MODELS FOR

OPTICAL COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS ANALYSIS

K. Sam Shanmugan
J. K. Townsend

Final Report
Contact #NAS9-17414
(For NASA-Johnson Space Center)

TR-7570-2

June, 1987
# TABLE OF CONTENTS

Abstract ..................................................................................................................... 11  
1. Introduction........................................................................................................ 1  
2. Laser Module..................................................................................................... 2  
3. OOK Optical Source........................................................................................ 3  
4. Single Mode Fiber Module............................................................................... 3  
5. Avalanche Photodetector.................................................................................. 6  
6. PIN Photodetector................................................................................................ 8  
7. OOK Semi-Analytic Error Estimator............................................................... 9  
8. Examples........................................................................................................... 10  
9. References........................................................................................................ 12  

Appendix A Literature Review – Models for Optical Sources..................... 54  
Appendix B Simulation of Digital Lightwave Communication Links........... 65  

The content of this page includes a table of contents providing an overview of the document's structure, including sections on abstracts, introductions, modules, sources, detectors, error estimators, examples, references, and appendices.
Because of the presence of intersymbol interference and non-Gaussian noise sources, the analytical evaluation of the performance of lightwave communication links is difficult. Monte-Carlo simulations provide a powerful alternate approach to performance evaluation. This report describes a set of simulation models that can be used as building blocks for simulation based analysis and design of lightwave communication systems including the systems that are being proposed for on-board signal distribution within the Space Station. The simulation models described in this report are implemented within the BOSS (Block-Oriented Systems Simulation) framework.

Two appendices are included with this report. Appendix A is a summary of a literature review on models for optical sources that will be useful for simulating analog lightwave communication links. A tutorial on the simulation of digital lightwave links is included in Appendix B.
I. INTRODUCTION

The BOSS Lightwave Module Library contains modules which are useful for analyzing certain single mode fiber digital and analog communication links. The library features a general Single Mode Fiber module, an Avalanche Photodetector module, a PIN Photodetector module, a Semi-Analytic Error Rate Estimator module for digital On-Off Keyed (OOK) systems, and a Power Series Laser module, plus various other lower-level and internal modules (listed below).

In addition, two example systems are included to demonstrate how to use the modules.

The following is a list of the modules in the Lightwave Module Library arranged according to group name:

ANALOG MODULATORS
   LASER (POWER SERIES)

BASIC BUILDING BLOCKS *TYPE/UNITS CONVERSION*
   REAL TO DBM

CALIBRATION DEVICES/METERS
   DELAY METER (REAL)
   OPTICAL AVERAGE POWER
   PRINT AVERAGE OPTICAL POWER

CHANNELS
   SINGLE MODE FIBER (LINEAR)

DIGITAL SOURCES
   OOK OPTICAL SOURCE

ESTIMATORS
   NOISE BW IMPULSE INJECT (REAL)
   OOK ERROR RATE ESTIMATOR

ESTIMATORS *INTERNALS*
   COUNT ERRORS & GENERATE STOP
   DELAY TX_SIG
   NOISE BW COMPUTE (REAL)
   OOK ERROR PROB CALCULATE
   OOK PRINT
   OOK POINT TO DISTANCE

FILTERS
   BUTWTH FILTER (REAL)

FILTERS *INTERNALS*
The top-level modules are discussed in more detail below. Many of the modules in the lightwave database are lower-level internal modules and are not explicitly discussed in detail here. Of course, on-line documentation is available for these modules as well as all other modules in BOSS. On-line documentation for the modules discussed below is provided in the Appendix.

It should be pointed out that in general, modeling of lightwave systems is rather problem dependent. It is difficult to separate the functionality of the various components of lightwave systems into modules which are totally independent of other modules in the system. This is the reason why modules for other lightwave system degradations are not currently available in the Lightwave Module Library.

2. LASER MODULE

This module models the input current to optical power output characteristic for a laser diode above threshold using a power series nonlinearity. The module is intended for modeling analog lightwave communication systems where the nonlinearity of the laser is the predominate degradation (in the laser). The maximum order of the polynomial is five, and is specified either by harmonic levels (in decibels relative to the fundamental) or by direct entry of the polynomial coefficients themselves.

The parameters of the module are:

HARM/COEF
TEST TONE MAGNITUDE
5TH HARMONIC LEVEL
4TH HARMONIC LEVEL
3RD HARMONIC LEVEL
2ND HARMONIC LEVEL
EFFICIENCY
BIAS POWER
BIAS CURRENT

-2-
3. OOK OPTICAL SOURCE

This module outputs an On-Off Keyed (OOK) non-return-to-zero signal used to drive a lightwave fiber module. The random binary data on-amplitude is controlled by the value of the parameter "AVG OPTICAL POWER", which has units of decibel milliwatts (dbm). Initialization code reads in this value and computes the on-amplitude assuming that the off-amplitude is zero.

4. SINGLE MODE FIBER MODULE

The Single Mode Fiber modules provided in the BOSS lightwave Module Library is an implementation of a model given by Duff [1]. The baseband transfer function of a single mode fiber used in this module is given by the following equation:

\[
H(f) = \int_{-\infty}^{\infty} S(\lambda) L(\lambda) e^{-j\omega L(\lambda)} \lambda d\lambda
\]

where

- \( \omega = 2\pi f \)
- \( L \) = fiber length
- \( S(\lambda) \) = optical source spectrum vs wavelength
- \( L(\lambda) = 1/(fiber \ loss) \) vs wavelength
- \( T(\lambda) = fiber \ group \ delay \ vs \ wavelength \)
  (antiderivative of dispersion vs wavelength)

In the BOSS module, an initialization subroutine calculates the transfer function given in Equation 1, takes the inverse FFT, and truncates the resulting impulse response. The impulse response is then convolved with the incoming signal using a tapped delay-line, implemented in block diagrams.

The integral in Equation 1 is implemented using Simpson's rule. The interval specified by the lower and upper limits of integration should be large enough to include insignificant portions of the source spectral envelope, \( S(\lambda) \).
The module has three "modes" of operation:

1. Both source spectral envelope and fiber chromatic dispersion specified by closed form approximate functions;
2. Source spectral envelope specified by tabular data file, and closed form approximation for chromatic dispersion;
3. Both source spectral envelope and chromatic dispersion specified by tabular data files.

In all three modes, the fiber loss per kilometer is specified by tabular data files.

The closed form approximation for the source spectrum as a function of wavelength is given by

\[ S(\lambda) = \frac{1}{\sigma_s \sqrt{2\pi}} \exp\left(-\frac{(\lambda - \lambda_s)^2}{2 \sigma_s^2}\right) \]  

(2)

where

\( \sigma_s \) = rms spectral width  
\( \lambda_s \) = source center wavelength

The chromatic dispersion closed form approximation as a function of wavelength is (assuming a silica fiber)

\[ \frac{dT(\lambda)}{d\lambda} = (s/c) \left(\frac{\lambda - \lambda_0}{\lambda^2}\right) \]  

(3)

where

\( s \) = a unitless constant  
\( c \) = speed of light  
\( \lambda_0 \) = zero-dispersion wavelength

The group delay is then

\[ T(\lambda) = (s/c) \left[ \ln\left(\frac{\lambda}{\lambda_0}\right) + \frac{\lambda_0 - \lambda}{\lambda}\right] \]  

(4)
Some of the parameters only apply to the closed form approximation, while others only apply to functions specified by tabular data files. Although BOSS always requires a valid entry for each parameter, the value for the parameter may be ignored by the module if it does not apply to the given module mode of operation.

The following parameters are read only when the closed form approximation for chromatic dispersion is used:

DISPERSION ADJUSTMENT CONSTANT
ZERO DISPERSION WAVELENGTH

Parameters read only when the closed form approximation for the source spectrum is used are:

RMS SOURCE SPECTRAL WIDTH
SOURCE CENTER WAVELENGTH

The following parameters apply only when chromatic dispersion as a function of wavelength is specified in a tabular data file:

GROUP DELAY POINT (WAVELENGTH)
GROUP DELAY POINT (DELAY)
DISPERSION FILENAME

The following parameter is read only when the source spectral envelope is specified by a tabular data file:

SOURCE SPECTRAL ENVELOPE FILENAME

The remainder of the parameters are used regardless of the mode of operation of the fiber module, and are as follows:

FIBER LENGTH
# OF POINTS IN FIBER H(F)
# OF PARTITIONS FOR INTEGRATION
INTEGRATION UPPER LIMIT
INTEGRATION LOWER LIMIT
FIBER H(T) SAVE FILENAME
FIBER LOSS FILENAME
RECALCULATE FIBER H(T)
MODE OF OPERATION

Computing the fiber impulse response for a given set of parameters can require from five to forty-five minutes of cpu time. In many applications, the same fiber characteristics may be used from one simulation to the next. To prevent wasting time recalculating the fiber impulse response in these cases, the module writes the calculated impulse response to the "FIBER H(T) SAVE FILENAME" when the value of the parameter "RECALCULATE FIBER H(T)" is set to TRUE. In subsequent simulation runs, the value would be set to FALSE, which causes the program to read the impulse response from the file specified by the parameter "FIBER H(T) SAVE FILENAME."

To insure that the parameters passed to the fiber module in a given simulation run are the same as the ones used to calculate the fiber impulse response in the save file, the module writes out a "verification record" (explained in the BOSS user's manual) at the bottom of the file. This verification record contains the numeric values for all parameters which were required to generate the fiber impulse response. Before the fiber module will successfully read the verification record, all of the parameters of the verification record must agree with the parameters passed into the fiber module. This prevents reading from a fiber impulse response file which was generated with parameters different from those values shown on the simulation parameter list.

5. AVALANCHE PHOTODETECTOR

This module is an implementation of an Avalanche PhotoDetector (APD) based on the Poisson and McIntyre distributions [2].

The number of primary charge carries (hole-electron pairs) in an APD is modeled by a Poisson process, with the average number per $\Delta t$ given by

$$\bar{N} = \frac{n}{h} P_{inc} (t) \cdot \Delta t + n_d \cdot \Delta t$$  \hspace{1cm} (5)

where
\( P_{\text{inc}}(t) \) = incident optical power
\( \eta \) = quantum efficiency
\( h \) = Planck's constant
\( \nu \) = optical frequency
\( n_d \) = number of dark charge carriers/second

The exact number of primary carriers, \( n_p \), is drawn from this Poisson. Each primary charge carrier pair generates secondary charge carriers (providing the gain) in a random way. The discrete probability density of the number of secondary charge carriers plus the original primary charge carrier was found by McIntyre to be

\[
P(n_i = m) = \frac{(1-k)^m \Gamma(m) \left[ \frac{1+k(m-1)}{1-k} \right]}{[1+k(m-1)] \Gamma(1-k) \left[ \frac{1+k(m-1)}{1-k} \right]} \cdot \left[ \frac{G-1}{G} \right]^{(m-1)}
\]

Hence for a given \( \Delta t \), the output current of the APD is

\[
i(t) = \frac{C_e n_p}{\Delta t} \sum_{i=1}^{n_i}
\]

where

\( C_e \) = the charge of an electron
\( n_i \) = number of secondary charge carriers plus the primary generated in \( \Delta t \) seconds

The actual random number generation is done by the primitive module AVALANCHE PHOTODIODE RAN_GEN. The McIntyre distribution is implemented using the table lookup method. The following parameters to the APD module are related to the distribution:

AVG APD GAIN
APD "K" PARAMETER
MAX CDF PROBABILITY
CDF TABLE SIZE
The cumulative distribution function (cdf) is generated once at the beginning of the simulation from values given in the above parameters. A binary search is used to produce variates from the table during the simulation. "MAX CDF PROBABILITY" and "CDF TABLE SIZE" control the accuracy as explained in the on-line documentation in the Appendix.

Note that usage of this module in shot noise limited cases where the error rate however, is low (e.g., $10^{-9}$) require to much simulation time to be practical. It does accurately model the APD, and could be useful for waveform analysis.

The Poisson random number generator uses the acceptance-rejection method to output a deviate for the given mean [3].

The remaining module parameters are:

APD INITIAL SEED
DARK CURRENT (NANOAMPS)
QUANTUM EFFICIENCY
SOURCE CENTER WAVELENGTH

These parameters are further discussed in the on-line documentation given in the Appendix.

6. PIN PHOTODETECTOR

A PIN photodetector module is also provided, and is the same as the APD module, except that there is no secondary charge carrier generation. Hence, for the PIN, the number of primary charge carriers is the same as in Equation (5). The output current is given by

$$i(t) = \frac{C_e \cdot np}{\Delta t}$$

where

$C_e$ = the charge of an electron
np = the number of primary charge carriers generated in $\Delta t$ seconds
The parameters are the same as the APD, except there are no parameters pertaining to the McIntyre distribution.

7. OOK SEMI-ANALYTIC ERROR ESTIMATOR

This module uses the combined analytic-simulation technique for estimating the bit error rate of digital OOK systems [4]. This module is used in conjunction with the NOISE BW IMPULSE INJECT (REAL) module which is inserted in the block diagram at the point where the additive white Gaussian noise enters the system. The Error Estimator can be used only if the modules downstream of the point where additive white Gaussian noise enters the system are linear.

When set up properly, this module automatically determines the equivalent noise bandwidth of the cascade of modules downstream from the additive white Gaussian noise source, and estimates the amount of delay between the transmitted and received bitstreams. Results from the calibration phase are available for viewing in the Postprocessor using the View Printed Output option.

After the module has finished the calibration phase, it begins the error estimation phase. For each received sample, the distance to the decision threshold is measured (the decision threshold is a parameter to the module). The estimated noise bandwidth and the user specified value of noise power spectral density are used to determine the variance of the Gaussian noise at the input to the estimator. The measured distance to the threshold is divided by the square root of this variance and a Gaussian tail probability (Q function) lookup is performed. The resulting error probability for this received sample is averaged with the error probability for the corresponding sample in all the bits in the estimation phase of the simulation.

The results are plotted in a multi-dimensional plot for viewing in the Postprocessor. If the BOSS Parameter Iteration option is NOT used, the only independent axis for the plot is NORMALIZED BIT TIME (MICROSECONDS). This plot is useful for determining the sensitivity of the error rate to timing errors in the sample and decide portion of the receiver.

If Parameter Iteration is used, the extra independent axis can be used to plot the variation of a parameter (where each iterated value is used in a
separate simulation) on the same multi-dimensional error rate plot (see the BOSS user's manual for a more detailed description of Parameter Iteration).

This Estimator module has an option which allows it to count actual errors which occur due to shot noise or severe ISI and store these in a multi-dimensional plot with NORMALIZED BIT TIME (MICROSECONDS) as the independent axis. The user can input the minimum number of errors which must be counted for every sample in the bit interval. When this number of errors has been exceeded for all samples in the bit interval, the Estimator module outputs a signal which can be used to drive a TERMINATE SIMULATION module. This module shuts down the simulation by setting time equal to STOP TIME. This feature allows the Estimator to be used in situations where there is a significant amount of shot noise (enough to cause the sample to cross the decision threshold) in addition to thermal noise.

From 10 to 100 errors should be counted to obtain reasonable confidence in the error probability estimate, so for extremely low error rates direct simulation is impractical. In these cases, an alternate simulation technique such as Importance Sampling should be used [4].

The parameters for the Error Estimator module are:

CALIBRATION START TIME
NOISE BW CALC DURATION
# OF SAMPLES IN CORR SUB SEQ
MAX DELAY TO CALCULATE
# OF SYMBOLS FOR ERROR EST
# OF SAMPLES/SYMBOL
THERMAL NOISE PSD
DECISION THRESHOLD
MINIMUM # OF ERRORS
PROB OF ERROR AXIS LABEL
INDEPENDENT AXIS #2 LABEL
INDEPENDENT AXIS #2 VALUE

8. EXAMPLES

Two examples are presented in this section which use most of the modules in the Lightwave Module Library. The examples are mainly for illustration, and are not intended to show the only valid usage of the modules.
The first example is an end to end single mode fiber system, with on-off keying (block diagram shown in Figure 1). The simulation parameters are shown in Figure 2. In this example, the fiber module uses the closed form approximations for both source spectral envelope and dispersion given in Equation 2 and Equation 3 (hence the parameter value CLOCLO). Since the parameter "RECALCULATE FIBER H(T)" is FALSE, the module will read the fiber impulse response from the file HIGHRES.SAV. The decision threshold value of 0.125 was determined from a previous simulation run.

The system level parameter values for the error estimator, PIN photodetector, fiber, and source modules are shown respectively in Figure 3. The INDEPENDENT AXIS #2 parameters are not used in this example, but are available for Parameter Iteration if desired. Notice that the three tabular filenames in the fiber module are all exported to the same filename. Since the fiber module is using closed form approximations for source spectrum and dispersion, it ignores the file name given for the respective tabular file parameters.

Data written out into the Postprocessor by the error rate estimator and PRINT AVERAGE OPTICAL POWER modules is shown in Figure 4 (this data can be read by selecting the View Printed Output option). The estimator writes out the beginning and ending times for calculating the noise bandwidth of the receiver and the start time for measuring the delay between the transmitted and received bitstreams. Also, the time which the actual error rate estimation begins is printed along with the minimum value of STOP TIME required to process the requested number of bits. The calculated delay in samples is displayed along with the single sided noise bandwidth in Megahertz. This information is useful when initially setting up a run with the error rate estimator module. The PRINT AVERAGE OPTICAL POWER module writes out the optical power in both dBm and Watts, as seen in Figure 4.

A plot of Log (Probability of Bit Error) versus normalized symbol time for this example is shown in Figure 5. From the plot, sensitivity to timing errors in the receiver can be easily seen. If the independent axis #2 parameters had been used with Parameter Iteration, this plot would have had an additional dimension (the additional dimension would be orthogonal to the plane of the page).
The block diagram for the second example is shown in Figure 6. In this example, the three QPSK channels are Frequency Division Multiplexed and the composite signal used to intensity modulate a laser. The QPSK portion of the system is simulated using complex envelope representation. A pseudocarrier is introduced to interface this complex envelope signal to the lightwave portion of the link, which operates on real signals. The pseudocarrier is the removed at the output of the lightwave link. From this point on, the signal is again in complex envelope form.

Figure 7 shows the simulation parameters and the system level parameters for the Laser module. In the example, a normalized baud rate of one is used, with a pseudocarrier frequency of 10. The laser operates with a third harmonic level of 14 dB below the fundamental. Thus when the laser has an input tone with a magnitude of 10, (the test tone magnitude) the output will have a third harmonic value 14 dB below the output at the input tone frequency.

In this particular simulation, the nonlinearity of the laser is the predominate degradation, therefore the fiber module is not used (since it is linear). A gain module is used for scaling in place of the fiber module.

In Figure 8, the magnitude spectrum of the laser output in shown. Figure 9 displays a scatter plot and a time plot of the receive filter output.

It is hoped that the examples provide some assistance in using the Lightwave Module Library. The Block diagrams and parameter listings should provide a starting point for using the modules to analyze other lightwave system configurations.

9. REFERENCES


Figure 1. OOK digital lightwave example block diagram.

Figure 2. Simulation parameters for digital lightwave example.
<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Calibration Start Time</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Noise BW Calc Duration</td>
<td>Noise BW Calc Duration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># of Samples in CORR Sub Seq</td>
<td># of Samples in CORR Sub Seq</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Max Delay to Calculate</td>
<td>Max Delay to Calculate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># of Symbols for Error Est</td>
<td># of Symbols for Error Est</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># of Samples/Symbol</td>
<td># of Samples/Symbol</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Thermal Noise PSD</td>
<td>Thermal Noise PSD</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Decision Threshold</td>
<td>Decision Threshold</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Minimum * of Errors</td>
<td>Minimum * of Errors</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Prob of Error Axis Label</td>
<td>Prob of Bit Error</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent Axis *2 Label</td>
<td><em>Not Used</em></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Independent Axis *2 Value</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit</td>
<td>Exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dark Current (nAmps)</td>
<td>Dark Current (nAmps)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Initial Seed</td>
<td>Spin Initial Seed</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Quantum Efficiency</td>
<td>0.75</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Center Wavelength</td>
<td>1.28</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit</td>
<td>Exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Dispersion Adjustment Constant</td>
<td>0.0142</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>RMS Source Spectral Width</td>
<td>0.03</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Center Wavelength</td>
<td>1.29</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Zero Dispersion Wavelength</td>
<td>1.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Delay Point (Delay)</td>
<td>0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Group Delay Point (Wavelength)</td>
<td>1.31</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber Length</td>
<td>1.5</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># of Points in Fiber H(F)</td>
<td># of Points in Fiber H(F)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td># of Partitions for Integration</td>
<td># of Partitions for Integration</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integration Upper Limit</td>
<td>1.49</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Integration Lower Limit</td>
<td>1.07</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber H(T) Save Filename</td>
<td>Fiber H(T) Save Filename</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Dispersion Filename</td>
<td>Dispersion Filename</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Source Spectral Envelope Filename</td>
<td>Source Spectral Envelope Filename</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Fiber Loss Filename</td>
<td>Fiber Loss Filename</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Recalculate Fiber H(T)</td>
<td>Recalculate Fiber H(T)</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Mode of Operation</td>
<td>Mode of Operation</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit</td>
<td>Exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>Parameter</th>
<th>Value</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Avg Optical Power</td>
<td>Avg Launched Optical Power</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Bit Rate</td>
<td>Bit Rate</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Seed</td>
<td>8967899</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Exit</td>
<td>Exit</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Figure 3. Parameter values at the system level for: Error Rate Estimator, PIN Photodetector, Single Mode Fiber, and OOK Source.
Your choice of parameters for the
COX_ERROR ESTIMATOR result in the
Following computed times:
noise by start time, noise by stop time
\[
= 7.1400002E-02 \quad 0.1428000
\]
delay set start time, error set start time
\[
= 0.2142000 \quad 0.3232322
\]
error set minimum stop time : 3.071352

On-Off keyed error set tx to rx delay \[
= 25 \text{ (samples)}
\]
On-Off keyed error set noise by \[
= 104.3952 \quad \text{(single sided, Hertz)}
\]
There were 384 bits used in cox error estimation.
Incident average optical power \[
= -38.98030 \quad \text{Decibel milliwatts}
\]
Incident average optical power \[
= 1.2646481E-07 \quad \text{watts}
\]

Figure 4. Postprocessor printed output for digital lightwave example.

Figure 5. Bit error rate plot for digital example.
Figure 6. Intensity modulation example block diagram.
STOP-TIME = 0.2
DT = 0.01
PIN INITIAL SEED = 992326
DARK CURRENT (NANOMPS) = 30
QUANTUM EFFICIENCY = 0.7
FIBER GAIN = 1.0e-7
RX FILTER BW = 0.8
RX FILTER ORDER = 5
DEMOD FILTER BW = 5
NEGATIVE PSEUDOCARRIER FREQ = -10
SOURCE CENTER WAVELENGTH = 1.3
BIAS POWER = 5
BIAS CURRENT = 20
EFFICIENCY = 0.5
3RD HARMONIC LEVEL = -14
5TH HARMONIC LEVEL = -100
PSEUDOCARRIER FREQ = 10
TX FILTER ORDER = 5
3 DB BANDWIDTH = 1
BAUD RATE = 1

Figure 7. Simulation parameters for FDMA example and the system level parameters for the Laser module.

Figure 8. Laser module output spectrum for the FDMA example.
Figure 9. Scatter plot and time plot of receive filter output.
11. APPENDIX

This Appendix contains the on-line documentation for the following top-level lightwave modules:

AVALANCHE PHOTO-DETECTOR
LASER (POWER SERIES)
OOK OPTICAL SOURCE
OOK ERROR RATE ESTIMATOR
PIN PHOTO-DETECTOR
SINGLE MODE FIBER (LINEAR)
MODULE NAME: AVALANCHE PHOTO-DETECTOR
GROUP: NOISE AND INTERFERENCE
DATABASE: DUA0:[BOSS.ADD_DB.LIGHT]
AUTHOR: TOWNSEND
CREATION DATE: 18-May-1987 16:41:03

DESCRIPTION:

This module implements an avalanche diode photo detector. The input signal should be an optical power signal (Watts). Any small amount of negative power on this input will be ignored by the module (this may occur in an FFT filter, for example). Shot noise effects are simulated using an AVALANCE PHOTODIODE RAN_GEN module. The output current is in units of microamps.

REVISIONS:

Author : SYSADMIN
Date : 6-Jun-1987 1:50:40
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

Author : SYSADMIN
Date : 18-May-1987 16:41:03
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

INPUT SIGNALS:

OPTICAL POWER IN
Lower Limit: -1.7e38
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The incident optical power in watts.

OUTPUT SIGNALS:

OUTPUT CURRENT
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The avalanche photo diode output current in MICROAMPS.

PARAMETERS:

APD INITIAL SEED
Lower Limit: 1
Type: INTEGER

Type: REAL
Upper Limit: 2147483647

Initial seed for random number generator. Should be a large odd integer.

-------
AVG APD GAIN
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The gain of the apd (average number of total charge carriers for each primary charge carrier).

-------
APD "K" PARAMETER
Lower Limit: 0
Upper Limit: 0.99999

The apd "k" parameter (ionization ratio).

-------
DARK CURRENT (NANOAMPS)
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The PIN dark current in nanoamps.

-------
QUANTUM EFFICIENCY
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.0

The quantum efficiency of the pin diode.

-------
SOURCE CENTER WAVELENGTH
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Center wavelength of the source in micrometers. This is used to determine the optical frequency.

-------
MAX CDF PROBABILITY
Lower Limit: 0.8
Upper Limit: 0.999999

This parameter specifies the maximum probability used when generating the discrete cumulative distribution function. Ie, this is the maximum probability accumulated during the generation of the cdf (the probability is set to 1 at this point in the cdf). A typical number for this parameter is 0.9999. If this number is set too close to 1, the routine may never finish generating the cdf due to roundoff error, hence it is usually best not to exceed 0.9999.
CDF TABLE SIZE

Type: INTEGER
Lower Limit: 1
Upper Limit: 5000

This parameter defines the number of elements in the cumulative distribution function (cdf) for the McIntyre (internal) random number gen. This number should be as large as the largest number in the internally generated cdf lookup table, up to a maximum of around 1000. Note: 1000 is always a reasonable value.

So, if for example, the average apd gain is 10, and the "k" parameter is equal to .2, the largest number used in the cdf table is around 20 to get "max probability" equal to 0.9999. So a cdf table size of 20 would be large enough in this example. The largest number used in generating the cdf is read using the POST PROCESSOR VIEW PRINTED OUTPUT option. If the cdf table size is larger than necessary, the random number generator will be slower (because of the larger table to search).

For situations where the cdf table requires values >1000 or so, the size should be fixed at 1000, since the table will do a linear interpolation if necessary.

COMPUTED PARAMETERS:

ELECTRON CONST
Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Electron constant, computed.

DARK CONST
Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Dark constant, computed.

POWER CONST
Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Power constant, computed.

MODULES USED IN BLOCK DIAGRAM:
SELECT
>= REAL
ADDER
MULTIPLIER
INITIALIZATION CODE:

Subroutine: avalanche_photo_detector
Arguments:
- QUANTUM EFFICIENCY
- SOURCE CENTER WAVELENGTH
- DARK CURRENT (NANOAMPS)
- POWER CONST
- DARK CONST
- ELECTRON CONST

Description:

This routine calculates 3 constants: "power const", "dark const", and "electron const". "Power const" equals the product of "source center wavelength", "quantum efficiency", and "dt", divided by 1.989e-13. "Power const" converts the input optical power units to average number of charge carriers. "Dark const" is the number of dark charge carriers in delta t seconds. "Electron const" converts charge into current in microamps.
DESCRIPTION:

This module models the optical power output vs current input characteristic for a laser diode above threshold. The laser is represented by an AM-AM, memoryless non-linearity which is approximated by a fifth order polynomial. Laser diodes are biased for analog applications above the threshold (lasing region). The input current, output optical power, and slope of the characteristic (the output efficiency) at the bias point must be given. The coefficients of the remaining terms in the polynomial approximation may be entered directly (if "harm/coef" is .false.) or as the levels of the 2nd through 5th harmonics (if "harm/coef" is .true.), measured relative to the fundamental with a test tone of peak magnitude "test tone magnitude".

The polynomial approximation assumes that the input current remains above the threshold current. If the input drops below this, the calculated output power may be <0. In this case, the output power is set to 0, since power output cannot be negative. In this case, the results will not be accurate for samples near or below threshold.

REVISIONS:

Author : SYSADMIN
Date : 6-Jun-1987 2:04:28
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

Author : SYSADMIN
Date : 26-Mar-1987 9:56:13
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

INPUT SIGNALS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INPUT CURRENT</th>
<th>Type: REAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lower Limit:</td>
<td>0.0</td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Limit:</td>
<td>1.7e38</td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Laser input current. Should always be greater than the
threshold current.

OUTPUT SIGNALS:
OPTICAL PWR OUT  Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Laser optical power output.

PARAMETERS:
HARM/COEF  Type: LOGICAL
Lower Limit: NIL
Upper Limit: NIL

When this logical parameter is .true., the values of parameters "XXX harmonic level" are interpreted as harmonic levels. When .false., they are interpreted as coefficients of the 5th order polynomial (efficiency is the first order term).

TEST TONE MAGNITUDE  Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Peak magnitude of sinusoidal input current for which the harmonic levels were determined. This parameter value is not used if "harm/coef" is .false.

5TH HARMONIC LEVEL  Type: REAL
Lower Limit: -1.7e38
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Level of fifth harmonic (in dB) relative to the fundamental. If the parameter "harm/coef" is .false., this parameter is the coefficient of the fifth order term in the polynomial.

4TH HARMONIC LEVEL  Type: REAL
Lower Limit: -1.7e38
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Level of fourth harmonic (in dB) relative to the fundamental. If the parameter "harm/coef" is .false., this parameter is the coefficient of the fourth order term in the polynomial.

3RD HARMONIC LEVEL  Type: REAL
Lower Limit: -1.7e38
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Level of third harmonic (in dB) relative to the fundamental. If the parameter "harm/coef" is .false., this parameter is the coefficient of the cubed term in the polynomial.

2ND HARMONIC LEVEL  
Lower Limit: -1.7e38  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Level of second harmonic (in dB) relative to the fundamental. If the parameter "harm/coef" is .false., this parameter is the coefficient of the squared term in the polynomial.

EFFICIENCY  
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Slope of the output power vs input current characteristic at the bias point. The units of this parameter must correspond to the units of the output power/input current.

BIAS POWER  
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Power output at bias point (corresponding current specified by the parameter "bias current"). Units should be same as the output power signal.

BIAS CURRENT  
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The units of this parameter should be the same as the input current, and the parameter "test tone magnitude".

COMPUTED PARAMETERS:

A2  
Lower Limit: -1.7e38  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Computed.

A3  
Lower Limit: -1.7e38  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38
Computed.

\[ a_4 \]
\[ \text{Type: REAL} \]

\begin{align*}
\text{Lower Limit: } & -1.7e38 \\
\text{Upper Limit: } & 1.7e38 \\
\end{align*}

Computed.

\[ a_5 \]
\[ \text{Type: REAL} \]

\begin{align*}
\text{Lower Limit: } & -1.7e38 \\
\text{Upper Limit: } & 1.7e38 \\
\end{align*}

MODULES USED IN BLOCK DIAGRAM:
- SUBTRACTOR
- GAIN
- MULTIPLIER
- ADDER
- \( \geq \) REAL
- CONST GEN
- SELECT

INITIALIZATION CODE:

Subroutine: `laser_pwr_series`

Arguments:
- EFFICIENCY
- 2ND HARMONIC LEVEL
- 3RD HARMONIC LEVEL
- 4TH HARMONIC LEVEL
- 5TH HARMONIC LEVEL
- TEST TONE MAGNITUDE
- HARM/COEF
- BIAS POWER
- \( a_2 \)
- \( a_3 \)
- \( a_4 \)
- \( a_5 \)

Description:

This subroutine calculates the coefficients of the second through fifth order terms of the polynomial approximation of the power output vs current input characteristic of the laser diode. These values are determined from the levels of the 2nd through 5th harmonics (relative to the fundamental), the magnitude of the test tone, the output efficiency (i.e., slope of the characteristic at the
bias point). If "harm/coef" is .false., then the entered harmonic level parameters are used as the polynomial coefficients.
This module outputs an on-off keyed signal used to drive a lightwave fiber module. The user specifies the on level via the value of parameter "avg optical power", which is in units of decibel milliwatts. The logical transmitted bitstream is also output for usage in an error estimator module.

REVISIONS:

Author: SYSADMIN
Date: 4-Jun-1987 17:43:54
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

Author: SYSADMIN
Date: 3-Mar-1987 8:01:29
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

INPUT SIGNALS: (none)

OUTPUT SIGNALS:

- TRANSMITTED BITSTREAM
  Type: LOGICAL
  Lower Limit: NIL
  Upper Limit: NIL

  The (logical) transmitted bitstream.

- OPTICAL OUTPUT
  Type: REAL
  Lower Limit: 0.0
  Upper Limit: 1.7e38

  Signal representing the optical power out of a digital lightwave source (for use with the SINGLE MODE FIBER (LINEAR) module).

PARAMETERS:

- AVG OPTICAL POWER
  Type: REAL
The average optical power in decibel milliwatts.

---

**BIT RATE**

Lower Limit: $3.0 \times 10^{-39}$
Upper Limit: $1.7 \times 10^{38}$

Bit rate in Hertz.

---

**ISEED**

Lower Limit: 1
Upper Limit: $2.147483647 \times 10^{9}$

Initial seed for the uniform random number generator. Should be a large odd integer.

---

**COMPUTED PARAMETERS:**

**ON LEVEL**

Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: $1.7 \times 10^{38}$

Computed by init code, the optical power for the on state.

---

**MODULES USED IN BLOCK DIAGRAM:**

- RANDOM DATA
- LOGICAL TO NUMERIC

**INITIALIZATION CODE:**

```fortran
;Subroutine: ook_optical_source
Arguments:
  AVG OPTICAL POWER
  ON LEVEL

Description:

This routine reads in the average optical power in decibel milliwatts, and outputs the on level necessary to produce this amount of optical power.
```
DESCRIPTION:

This module uses the combined analytic-simulation technique for estimating the probability of error for On-Off Keyed (OOK) systems. This module is used in conjunction with the NOISE BW IMPULSE INJECT (REAL) module, which is used during calibration.

During calibration time, the module calculates the equivalent noise bandwidth of the linear portion of the system, estimates the number of samples of delay between the transmitted and received signals. (These numbers are printed out for viewing in the post processor (VIEW PRINTED OUTPUT)).

The simulation stop time must be greater than or equal to est_stop, where est_stop is given by the following formula:

\[
est_{stop} = \text{caltime} + 3 \times \text{nbwdur} + (\text{nsseq} + 2 \times \text{maxdel}) \times \text{dt} + \text{symtime} \times (\text{numsym} + 1)
\]

where:
- caltime = "calibration start time"
- nbwdur = "noise bw calc duration"
- nsseq = "# samples in corr subseq"
- maxdel = "max delay to calculate"
- dt = simulation dt
- symtime = the symbol time in seconds
- numsym = "# symbols for error est"

This module also counts the number of bit errors which occurred during simulation and outputs the number of errors vs normalized symbol time as a multi-dimensional plot in the post processor.

The module provides an additional independent axis for the multi-dimensional error rate plot. This is for use with the BOSS PARAMETER ITERATION option.

Also, this module outputs a signal which can be used to drive a TERMINATE SIMULATION module when a specified number of errors have been counted in the simulation for ALL samples in a bit interval. For further details refer to external documentation.

REVISIONS:

Author: KOMP
Date: 5-Jun-1987 17:17:11
Description:
Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

Author: SYSADMIN
Date: 6-Mar-1987 8:21:22

Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

INPUT SIGNALS:
TRANSMITTED BITSTREAM
  Lower Limit: NIL
  Upper Limit: NIL

  The (logical) transmitted bitstream input.

RECEIVED SIGNAL
  Lower Limit: -1.7e38
  Upper Limit: 1.7e38

  The received (and degraded) on-off keyed signal.

OUTPUT SIGNALS:
TERMINATE SIMULATION
  Lower Limit: NIL
  Upper Limit: NIL

  This signal becomes .true. when all samples in the symbol
  have exceeded the user input "max # of errors". This
  signal is typically connected to a TERMINATE SIMULATION
  module.

PARAMETERS:
CALIBRATION START TIME
  Lower Limit: 0.0
  Upper Limit: 1.7e38

  Start time (absolute) of error rate estimator calibration
  in seconds. Nothing is happening in the error estimator
  before this time.

NOISE BW CALC DURATION
  Lower Limit: 0.0
  Upper Limit: 1.7e38

  Duration of the noise bandwidth calculation time interval
  in seconds.
# OF SAMPLES IN CORR SUB SEQ  
Type: INTEGER  
Lower Limit: 1  
Upper Limit: 4096  

This parameter specifies the number of samples used to perform the correlation between the 2 input data streams. The trade-off is accuracy of the delay estimate vs the amount of time needed to perform the correlation.

MAX DELAY TO CALCULATE  
Type: INTEGER  
Lower Limit: 1  
Upper Limit: 2147483647  

The maximum delay which the module can calculate. (Units are in samples).

# OF SYMBOLS FOR ERROR EST  
Type: INTEGER  
Lower Limit: 1  
Upper Limit: 2147483647  

This is the number of symbols which are used in the actual calculation of the probability of error.

# OF SAMPLES/SYMBOL  
Type: INTEGER  
Lower Limit: 1  
Upper Limit: 10000  

The number of samples in a symbol interval.

THERMAL NOISE PSD  
Type: REAL  
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38  

The power spectral density (SINGLE SIDED) of the analytically handled thermal noise.

DECISION THRESHOLD  
Type: REAL  
Lower Limit: 0.0  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38  

The decision threshold used to determine whether a 1 or zero was sent.

MINIMUM # OF ERRORS  
Type: REAL  
Lower Limit: 0.0  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38  

The minimum number of errors which must occur in each sample of the symbol interval before the "terminate simulation" signal toggles .true.
-----
PROB OF ERROR AXIS LABEL Type: CHARACTER
Lower Limit: 1
Upper Limit: 255

Label which will appear on the dependent axis of the plot. This parameter can also be thought of as the title of the plot, and must be unique for multiple instances of multi-dimensional plots in the same simulation.

-----
INDEPENDENT AXIS #2 LABEL Type: CHARACTER
Lower Limit: 1
Upper Limit: 255

(If used) label which will appear on the independent axis of the multi-dimensional error rate plot corresponding to the independent axis #2 values. This parameter and the parameter "independent axis #2 value" provide an additional independent axis for the error rate plot in the post processor, and are typically used with the BOSS PARAMETER ITERATION option. If not used, the parameter should be set to the default value *NOT USED*.

-----
INDEPENDENT AXIS #2 VALUE Type: REAL
Lower Limit: -1.7e38
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Value which will appear on the independent axis corresponding to the independent axis #2 label. The value entered for this parameter is ignored if the independent axis #2 label has the value *NOT USED*. This parameter and the parameter "independent axis #2 label" provide an additional independent axis for the error rate plot in the post processor, and are typically used with the BOSS PARAMETER ITERATION option.

-----
COMPUTED PARAMETERS:
SIM STOP TIME Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The simulation stop time (computed by init code).

-----
DELAY EST START TIME Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Absolute time (seconds) in which the estimation of delay begins.
NOISE BW START TIME
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.0e37

Time (seconds) in which noise bandwidth calculation begins. Computed by init code.

NOISE BW STOP TIME
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.0e37

Time (seconds) after which the noise bandwidth calculation ends. Computed by init code.

ERROR EST START TIME
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Time (seconds) after which actual calculation of the probability of error begins. Computed by init code.

MODULES USED IN BLOCK DIAGRAM:
ERROR ENABLE & SYMBOL COUNTER
SYMBOL SAMPLE NUMBER
T >= T ON & T <= T OFF
NOISE BW COMPUTE (REAL)
DELAY-METER (REAL)
OOK PRINT
DELAY TX_SIG
SAMPLE & HOLD
NOT
PRINT SIGNAL
T >= T ON
OR
LOGICAL TO NUMERIC
COUNT ERRORS & GENERATE STOP
OOK ERROR PROB CALCULATE

INITIALIZATION CODE:

Subroutine: ook_error_est
Arguments:
  CALIBRATION START TIME
  NOISE BW CALC DURATION
  # OF SAMPLES IN CORR SUB SEQ
  MAX DELAY TO CALCULATE
  # OF SYMBOLS FOR ERROR EST
  # OF SAMPLES/SYMBOL
Description:

This is rather complicated. The routine computes the various times required by modules in the simulation from more user friendly parameters. Many of the parameters this routine calculates are written into the PRINTED DATA option in the post processor. Refer to external documentation for further details.
MODULE NAME: PIN PHOTO-DETECTOR
GROUP: NOISE AND INTERFERENCE
DATABASE: DUAO:[BOSS.ADD_DB.LIGHT]
AUTHOR: TOWNSEND
CREATION DATE: 19-Feb-1987 14:17:40

DESCRIPTION:

This module implements a PIN diode photo detector. The input signal should be an optical power signal (Watts). Any small amount of negative power on this input will be ignored by the module (this may occur in an FFT filter, for example). Shot noise effects are simulated using a Poisson random number generator. The output current is in units of microamps.

REVISIONS:

Author : SYSADMIN
Date : 6-Jun-1987 1:53:33
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

Author : SYSADMIN
Date : 19-Feb-1987 14:17:40
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

INPUT SIGNALS:
OPTICAL POWER IN
Lower Limit: -1.7e38
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The incident optical power in watts.

OUTPUT SIGNALS:
OUTPUT CURRENT
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The pin diode output current in MICROAMPS.

PARAMETERS:

DARK CURRENT (NANOAMPS)
Lower Limit: 0.0

Type: REAL
PIN PHOTO-DETECTOR

Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The PIN dark current in nanoamps.

INITIAL SEED Type: INTEGER
Lower Limit: 1
Upper Limit: 2147483647

Initial seed for Poisson random number generator. Should be large and odd.

QUANTUM EFFICIENCY Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.0

The quantum efficiency of the pin diode.

SOURCE CENTER WAVELENGTH Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Center wavelength of the source in micrometers. This is used to determine the optical frequency.

COMPUTED PARAMETERS:

ELECTRON CONST Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Electron constant, computed.

DARK CONST Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Dark constant, computed.

POWER CONST Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Power constant, computed.

MODULES USED IN BLOCK DIAGRAM:
SELECT
>= REAL
ADDER
MULTIPLIER
Initialization Code:

Subroutine: pin_photo_detector
Arguments:
- Quantum efficiency
- Source center wavelength
- Dark current (nanoamps)
- Power const
- Dark const
- Electron const

Description:

This routine calculates 3 constants: "power const", "dark const", and "electron const". "Power const" equals the product of "source center wavelength", "quantum efficiency", and "dt", divided by 1.989e-13. "Power const" converts the input optical power units to average number of charge carriers. "Dark const" is the number of dark charge carriers in delta t seconds. "Electron const" converts charge into current in microamps.
DESCRIPTION:

This module implements one model of a single mode fiber. The initialization code reads in the parameters which describe the fiber and source characteristics, and generates from these the transfer function $H(f)$ of the fiber. The init code then takes the inverse FFT of $H(f)$, and truncates the insignificant portions from the resulting impulse response. This impulse response is written to a save file so that in subsequent runs it doesn’t have to be recalculated (this is controlled by a parameter). The model is linear since it relies on FFT relationships.

The model is discussed in "IEEE Journal on Selected Areas in Communications", January 1984, VOL SAC-2, NO 1, on pages 171 thru 184, by Don G. Duff. The details of this model are too complicated to describe here, please refer to external documentation for a more complete description of this module.

REVISIONS:

Author : SYSADMIN
Date : 4-Jun-1987 17:44:54
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

Author : SYSADMIN
Date : 10-Feb-1987 10:33:43
Description:

Module RECOMPILED by CONVERTER.

INPUT SIGNALS:

<table>
<thead>
<tr>
<th>INPUT</th>
<th>Type: REAL</th>
</tr>
</thead>
<tbody>
<tr>
<td>Lower Limit: 0.0</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
<tr>
<td>Upper Limit: 1.7e38</td>
<td></td>
</tr>
</tbody>
</table>

Fiber input signal. This signal is proportional to the optical power of the fiber input.
OUTPUT
Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38
Fiber output signal (optical power signal).

PARAMETERS:

DISPERSION ADJUSTMENT CONSTANT
Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39
Upper Limit: 1.7e38
When the internal closed form approximation for dispersion is used, this constant is multiplied by the dispersion function. A typical value is 0.0412.

RMS SOURCE SPECTRAL WIDTH
Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39
Upper Limit: 1.7e38
The rms source spectral envelope width (standard deviation) of the closed form internal Gaussian approximation to source spectral envelope. This parameter is ignored if tabular source spectral envelope is used. Units are micrometers.

SOURCE CENTER WAVELENGTH
Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39
Upper Limit: 1.7e38
The center wavelength of the source (micrometers). This parameter is used only when the closed form Gaussian approximation to the source spectral envelope is used. The parameter is ignored in all other cases.

ZERO DISPERSION WAVELENGTH
Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39
Upper Limit: 1.7e38
The fiber zero dispersion wavelength (micrometers). This value is used only when the "mode of operation" is set to require closed form internal approximation of dispersion, and is otherwise ignored.

GROUP DELAY POINT (DELAY)
Type: REAL
Lower Limit: -1.7e38
Upper Limit: 1.7e38
The group delay value (picoseconds/Kilometer) for the point which the tabular group delay function is forced to pass.
thru. (This function is obtained by integrating the tabular dispersion). This value is not used if the internal closed form function for dispersion is used. In this case, the group delay equals zero at the zero dispersion wavelength.

-----------
GROUP DELAY POINT (WAVELENGTH) Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The wavelength value (micrometers) for the point which the tabular group delay function is forced to pass thru. (This function is obtained by integrating the tabular dispersion). This value is not used if the internal closed form function for dispersion is used. In this case, the delay is zero at the zero dispersion wavelength.

-----------
FIBER LENGTH Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 0.0
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

The length of the fiber in Kilometers.

-----------
# OF POINTS IN FIBER H(F) Type: INTEGER
Lower Limit: 2
Upper Limit: 10000

The number of points in the fiber transfer function. This number sets the resolution of the transfer function and specifies the number of times that the integration over wavelength is performed. Must be EVEN.

-----------
# OF PARTITIONS FOR INTEGRATION Type: INTEGER
Lower Limit: 4
Upper Limit: 10000

The number of partitions used in the Simpson’s rule numerical integration over wavelength. There are several considerations in choosing this number. First, it must be an EVEN number. The larger this number, the more accurate the integration but the longer it will take to generate the fiber impulse response. Also, if this number is no chosen large enough, the integrand will not be sampled often enough and errors due to undersampling will result. Many times these errors will show up as a transfer function with many large bumps (it won’t look anything like a Gaussian shaped spectrum).

-----------
INTEGRATION UPPER LIMIT Type: REAL
Lower Limit: 3.0e-39  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Upper limit of integration which generates a sample of the fiber transfer function. Units are in micrometers. See external documentation for further info.

---------

INTEGRATION LOWER LIMIT  
Type: REAL

Lower Limit: 3.0e-39  
Upper Limit: 1.7e38

Lower limit of integration which generates one sample of the fiber transfer function. The units of this value are micrometers (this integration is with respect to wavelength). See external documentation for further info.

---------

FIBER H(T) SAVE FILENAME  
Type: NEW-FILE

Lower Limit: NIL  
Upper Limit: NIL

Filename of file containing the impulse response of the fiber. A new version of this file is written out each time the parameter "recalculate fiber h(t)" is .true. When this parameter is set to .false., the module READS the impulse response from this file.

This file is required because calculation of the fiber impulse response can require a relatively large amount of cpu time. This file allows the user to generate an impulse response for a given set of fiber parameters, then for subsequent simulation runs, read from this file (assuming the fiber parameters are not changed in these subsequent runs).

---------

DISPERSION FILENAME  
Type: OLD-FILE

Lower Limit: NIL  
Upper Limit: NIL

Filename of file containing a tabular specification of fiber dispersion (picoseconds/kilometer/micrometer) vs wavelength (micrometers). This file must be in the BOSS preferred file format. Data from this file is only used if the mode is either CLOTAB or TABTAB, but a valid old filename must be entered in any case. This function must span the range of integration specified by the parameters "integration lower limit" and "integration upper limit". The antiderivative of this function is calculated to get the group delay function for the fiber. This group delay function is then raised to the power $e$ and multiplied by the fiber length in kilometers.

The resulting group delay function is required to pass
thru the point specified by the parameters "group delay point (wavelength)" and "group delay point (delay)" (this evaluates the constant of integration).

The maximum number of entries is 10,000.

--------
SOURCE SPECTRAL ENVELOPE FILENAME Type: OLD-FILE
Lower Limit: NIL
Upper Limit: NIL

Filename of file containing the tabular specification of source spectral envelope vs wavelength (micrometers). For the overall gain to be correct, the source spectral envelope function MUST be normalized so that the area under this function equals unity. The BOSS preferred file format must be used, and wavelength values must be in the first column, with source spectral envelope values in the second. This function does not have to span the range of integration specified by the parameters "integration lower limit" and "integration upper limit", but the function will be assumed to be zero outside the values given. Since this function is a factor in the integrand, it should approach zero within the range of integration.

This file is not required if the mode is either CLOCL0 or CLOTAB, BUT a valid old filename must still be entered in any case (the fiber loss filename could be used in these cases).

The maximum number of entries is 10,000.

--------
FIBER LOSS FILENAME Type: OLD-FILE
Lower Limit: NIL
Upper Limit: NIL

Name of file containing the tabular values of fiber loss (dB/Kilometer) vs wavelength (micrometers). (Note that the loss is 1/gain). The file MUST be in the BOSS preferred file format, with wavelength in the first column and loss in the second column. This file is required in ALL modes of operation. The minimum and maximum values of wavelength MUST span the range of integration specified by the parameters "integration lower limit" and "integration upper limit".

The maximum number of entries is 10,000.

--------
RECALCULATE FIBER H(T) Type: LOGICAL
Lower Limit: NIL
Upper Limit: NIL

If this logical variable is .true., the current parameter values are used to recalculate a new fiber impulse response and write it to the save file. If .false., the
impulse response is read from the save file. This parameter is needed because the calculation of the fiber impulse response takes a long time (up to 1 cpu hour). So the first time a simulation is run with new parameter values, this parameter should be set to .true. For all subsequent runs using the same parameters, the value should be .false. THEREFORE, THIS PARAMETER SHOULD BE EXPORTED TO THE HIGHEST (SIMULATION) LEVEL!

--------
MODE OF OPERATION
Lower Limit: 1
Upper Limit: 6

This parameter specifies how the module will compute the fiber impulse response. There are 4 legal character entries (case INsensitive):
cloclo - Closed form internal approximation for source spectral envelope and dispersion.
clotab - Closed form internal approximation for source spectral envelope and tabular dispersion data supplied from a file.
tabclo - Tabular source spectral envelope data from a file and closed form internal approximation for dispersion.
tabtab - Both source spectral envelope AND dispersion are supplied as tabular inputs from 2 separate files.

For further information about the tabular data files or the approximations see the respective help info.

--------
COMPUTED PARAMETERS:

TAP GAIN
Lower Limit: -1.7e38
Upper Limit: 1.7e38
Vector Length: (# OF TAPS)

Tap gain for this cell.

--------

# OF TAPS
Lower Limit: 1
Upper Limit: 4096

The number of taps in the fiber impulse response.
(Computed by initialization code).

--------

MODULES USED IN BLOCK DIAGRAM:
TAPPED DELAY LINE CELL (REAL)
SINK
CONST GEN
INITIALIZATION CODE:

Subroutine: single_mode_fiber
Arguments:
- MODE OF OPERATION
- RECALCULATE FIBER H(T)
- FIBER LOSS FILENAME
- SOURCE SPECTRAL ENVELOPE FILENAME
- DISPERSION FILENAME
- FIBER H(T) SAVE FILENAME
- INTEGRATION LOWER LIMIT
- INTEGRATION UPPER LIMIT
- # OF PARTITIONS FOR INTEGRATION
- # OF POINTS IN FIBER H(F)
- ZERO DISPERSION WAVELENGTH
- FIBER LENGTH
- SOURCE CENTER WAVELENGTH
- RMS SOURCE SPECTRAL WIDTH
- DISPERSION ADJUSTMENT CONSTANT
- GROUP DELAY POINT (DELAY)
- GROUP DELAY POINT (WAVELENGTH)
- # OF TAPS
- TAP GAIN

Description:

Most of the work in this module is performed here. The routine reads in all parameters required to calculate the fiber impulse response. Description of the module describes this routine, so we will not be redundant here.
SINGLE MODE FIBER (LINEAR)
APPENDIX A

Literature Review - Models for Optical Sources
Fiber optic system sources and detectors are generally composed of direct bandgap semiconductor materials such as Gallium Arsenic which have an energy gap approximately equal to the energy in a photon of light of the desired wavelength. In photodetectors, most received photons cause ionization of a lattice atom creating a hole-electron pair (which can then create more hole-electron pairs in an avalanche photodiode). In optical sources, a forward biased junction is used to inject minority carriers, which create photons when they recombine.

Optical sources are of two types; light emitting diodes (LED's) and laser diodes. In LED's, recombination of injected minority carriers causes emission of light with a relatively broad wavelength range. The optical power emitted is approximately proportional to the LED current, but relatively little power may be coupled into an optical fiber. Also, the frequency response of LED's limit the frequencies at which they can be modulated.

Laser diodes have a better frequency response and can be modulated at frequencies up to several gigahertz, and more power can be coupled into a fiber over a narrower wavelength range. These properties make lasers preferable to LED's for applications which require high power or high frequency modulation.

However, lasers also have disadvantages, one of which is their nonlinearity. At low input currents, laser diodes act essentially as LED's, producing light by spontaneous emission. When the current is increased to a value called the threshold current, stimulated emission (lasing) begins and causes the power output to increase much faster with increasing current than it did below threshold. In stimulated emission, a photon striking a lattice atom in the active region can either be absorbed in ionizing the atom, or can cause a photon of the same wavelength to be released. Conditions are created so that the latter occurs more frequently, so that the light is amplified. Reflecting facets are placed at the ends of the active region so that light may continue to be amplified. It is this positive feedback which causes the power to be increased over that due to spontaneous emission. The initial photons to start this process come from spontaneous emission.
The power output versus current input curve (the laser's L-I characteristic) rises sharply above threshold due to the higher power output with stimulated emission than with spontaneous emission alone. This makes the laser diode an inherently nonlinear device, and therefore it is essential in analog applications that the laser remain above threshold for all values of the input. The laser is thus biased with a current which is about halfway between the threshold current and the highest laser current (in the middle of the lasing region). Because of the steepness of the L-I characteristic above threshold, the bias current is generally a small fraction above the threshold current. This makes temperature stability of the laser crucial, since the threshold current varies with temperature.

Since lasers are generally kept above threshold, it is the output in this region that it is most important to model. In this region, the slope of the L-I characteristic for all early and many current laser diodes exhibit prominent nonlinearities called "kinks," making them unsuitable for analog use. These kinks have several proposed explanations, such as the excitation of higher order transverse modes [1] (the active region of a laser diode is a resonant cavity). Newer lasers, such as narrow stripe lasers, have decreased the active region width so that these modes do not occur at normal current levels, and so these lasers can have a very linear characteristic above threshold.

Third order intermodulation signals (the most important if signal frequencies are kept within an octave) can be as much as 60 to 80 dB below the fundamental [2], so for some lasers a linear model (requiring only the bias point and slope of the L-I characteristic at the bias point) may be fairly accurate.

If the L-I relationship is not considered to be linear, the most straightforward way to model it is as a polynomial

\[
L = aI + bI^2 + cI^3 + \ldots
\]

where \( L \) is the power output and \( I \) is the current input relative to their bias values. The coefficient of the \( I \) term (\( a \)) is the slope of the L-I characteristic at the bias point (the efficiency), and the other coefficients may be determined from measured harmonic magnitudes, along with the input currents for which they were measured.
Nonlinearities are also sometimes described by measured values of AM to AM and AM to PM characteristics, which indicate the effect of variations in the input signal amplitude on the output magnitude and phase, respectively. Measurements on some lasers have shown [3] that below resonance, most of the intermodulation terms are due to AM to AM characteristics, while at the laser's resonant frequency, AM to PM characteristics may become significant due to increased reflection noise.

There are many models based on the physics of laser diodes, some of which are reviewed by Buus [4]. Some of these [5, 6, 7] allow the calculation of points on the L-I characteristic, which can then be used directly, or to determine the coefficients of a polynomial approximation. However, these models require values of many laser parameters, many of which would not be accurately known, and they require iterative solution. Although these models agree fairly well with measured threshold currents and efficiencies, the degree to which they model the nonlinearity is unknown.

There is another source of nonlinearity which may be as significant as the nonlinearity of the L-I characteristic. Most laser diodes do not emit a single wavelength of light, but rather a narrow spectrum of discrete wavelengths. The active regions of many lasers (such as stripe geometry lasers) have one dimension (the length) which is much greater than the other two. The active region is a resonant cavity, and the output wavelengths correspond to different longitudinal modes (normally, only the lowest order transverse modes are permitted). The spacing between the output wavelengths thus depends on the cavity length, and the relative magnitudes depend on the spontaneous emission and the optical gain of the different wavelengths. The shape of the output spectrum is generally modeled as Gaussian or Lorentzian [8], but the center wavelength and width of the spectrum are both functions of the output power level.

The shift in the center wavelength, when combined with a fiber with dispersion (different wavelengths propagate at different speeds) give rise to harmonics for a sinusoidal input current, and thus is a source of nonlinearity [9, 10]. This shift in center frequency may be on the order of the spacing between modes (or less) and still give rise to a possibly significant effect [9]. Published spectra [6, 11, 12] sometimes show a greater shift than
this. The width of the output spectrum has been shown to be approximately inversely proportional to the output power, so that as the output power increases, the spectrum shifts to longer wavelengths and narrows [6].

The model of the laser output spectrum may also need to account for modal partition noise. Although for a given constant input current, the total power output is nearly constant, the power in each mode may vary greatly. If the light then travels through a dispersive fiber, different wavelengths will travel at different velocities, so the power reaching the receiver will vary with time. Since the partitioning is random, this will have the effect of producing noise (unlike the shift in wavelengths above, which occurs synchronously with modulation and appears as a nonlinearity). Given the center wavelength, modal spacing, a measure of the spectral width and the total output power, the time averaged spectrum can be calculated using a Gaussian or Lorentzian envelope. Then, a random component can be added to each mode since the exact partitioning of the output power is random. Since the total output power is nearly constant, the power in the different modes must be negatively correlated, and the covariance between modes can be approximated by [8]

\[C(i, j) = -K^2 A(i) A(j)\]

\[C(i, i) = K^2 A(i) [1 - A(i)]\]

where \(C(i, j)\) is the covariance between modes \(i\) and \(j\), \(C(i, i)\) is the variance of the power in mode \(i\), \(A(i)\) is the fraction of the total power in mode \(i\), and \(K\) is a partition coefficient which has been measured and determined to be between 0.3 or 0.4 and 0.6 [8, 13].

So a complete model of the output spectrum would require that first the total output power be determined based on the input current and information about the L-I characteristic, and from this average power the spectral width and center wavelength could be calculated. From this and the mode spacing, the number of modes with significant power could be determined along with the wavelength and average power for each. Then, a random component with the above covariances could be added to each. Since modal partition noise is more of a problem when there are few modes, it may be reasonable to ignore this factor when there are many modes since the effect is reduced while the calculations required are increased.
This would be required for each sample of the input current, which may make the model impractical to use without further simplification. The complication is that the nonlinearity associated with the spectral shift and the modal partition noise are both effects due to both the laser source and dispersion in the optical fiber, so to model the laser alone so that when combined with any fiber model these effects will be observed seems to require calculating an output spectrum for each current level.

The discussion so far has assumed that the laser is memoryless, so that the output at any time depends only on the input at that time. The measured frequency response of laser diodes is generally flat at low frequencies, then has a resonant peak, after which the power output decreases with increasing frequency at 40 dB/decade[2]. As long as the modulation frequency is in the flat region of the frequency response (below the resonant frequency) this is a reasonable assumption. If it is modulated above this region, then the frequency response might be inserted as a filter placed after the input current but before the output power is calculated. However, the frequency response is often flat up to several gigahertz, and it is generally desirable to use the laser in this region, so the frequency response can probably be neglected most of the time.
REFERENCES


BIBLIOGRAPHY

Multiple Topics

The following books and articles each discuss most of the important characteristics of laser diodes, such as their nonlinearity, frequency response, modal noise and mode partition noise. Duff also discusses modeling of many laser characteristics that show up in digital applications, such as turn-on and turn-off response, pattern dependence and oscillations (also discussed by Channin). The linearity of some current laser diodes are quite good (Channin) and the frequency response of some allows them to be modulated above 1 GHz.


Quantum Physical Models

The following articles and books are concerned with modeling the physical operation of laser diodes. Buus is a review of the relevant equations used and of the various published models based on these. The articles by Streifer, Scifres and Burnham give a model which can be used to calculate the L-I characteristic of a laser diode given a number of its physical parameters. Many of these would be hard to determine, the model requires an iterative solution, and the results do not necessarily accurately describe the characteristics we are interested in. However, these articles also model the spectral width, which appears to be inversely proportional to the output power, which may be useful in modeling the output spectrum.
Nonlinearity

These articles are concerned with the nonlinearities of laser diodes. Shen discusses the kinks found in the above threshold region of many laser diodes and the effects of these on digital communication systems. Way and Afrashteh measured the AM/AM and AM/PM characteristics of laser diodes for modulation frequencies above 1 GHz, and conclude that below the resonant frequency, the AM/AM characteristic is most important. Lyons, Personick and Hayward discuss a nonlinearity due to the variation of the center wavelength synchronously with modulation and dispersion in the optical fiber. This is also discussed in Reference 5 above.


Some Published L-I Characteristics and Spectra

Although there seems to be little published quantitative data on the nonlinearity of laser diodes or on the magnitude of shift of the center wavelength described above, there are very many published L-I characteristics and output spectra at different power levels which show the shift in the center wavelength (and the narrowing described in an earlier section). Below are listed a few articles containing one or both of these types of data.


Noise

The power output of a laser diode is almost constant for a constant current input, but there can be significant noise due to two mechanisms. One is reflections, in which the laser's output characteristic changes when light is reflected back into the laser, which is discussed in Garvey and Quinn, and which would probably be difficult to model since it depends on the connections outside the laser source. The other type of noise is mode partition noise, which is caused by random variations in the power output of each mode (wavelength) which causes noise when passed through a dispersive fiber. To model this and the nonlinearity associated with the wavelength shift, it would probably be necessary to model the output spectrum. Laughton discusses the
characteristics of partition noise, and the shape of the output spectrum (approximated by a Gaussian or Lorentzian envelope).


APPENDIX B

Simulation of Digital lightwave Communication Links
SIMULATION OF DIGITAL LIGHTWAVE COMMUNICATION LINKS USING SYSTID

K. Sam Shanuigan, Ed E. Komp, J. Keith Townsend
ST*AR Corporation and University of Kansas
Lawrence, Kansas 66044

Aly E. Elrefale, Malcolm B. Romeiser
Bell Communications Research
Red Bank, New Jersey 07701-7020

ABSTRACT

Because of the presence of intersymbol interference and non-Gaussian noise sources, the evaluation of the performance of digital lightwave communication links is difficult. Direct Monte Carlo type simulations are impractical because of the long run times required to estimate low bit error rates. In this paper, techniques that combine analysis and simulation in modeling and implementing the functional blocks of a single-mode lightwave system using the SYSTID simulation package are discussed. A simulation example is presented which illustrates the capabilities of the semi-analytic approach to digital single-mode lightwave system analysis.

I. INTRODUCTION

The rapid pace in the research and development of improved and economical fiber cable, devices, and systems technology has resulted in large-scale deployment of lightwave communication systems. Early lightwave communication systems utilized multimode fibers which allowed only limited information bandwidth and repeater spacing [1]. As technology advanced, emphasis shifted away from multi-mode lightwave systems, in favor of the higher bandwidths and lower losses available with single-mode systems. This growth has increased the range of potential applications and led to lightwave systems being used more and more in highly competitive commercial applications. As a result, lightwave systems engineers require more detailed information on the possible tradeoffs available when designing or deploying a system. Analytical methods alone are becoming insufficient because of many necessary simplifying assumptions. The lightwave system designer is often forced to evaluate design alternatives by constructing prototypes; an approach which can be costly — especially in a research or early design phase.

In a recent paper [2], Duff presented models and analysis methods for computer-aided design of digital lightwave systems. Duff's approach was based primarily on analytical approximations to compute performance measures such as error rates, eye diagrams, and power penalties. In contrast, the approach presented here is based on detailed simulation models for functional blocks in lightwave communication links. Computer simulation of digital lightwave systems is an alternative to both hardware evaluation and pure analytical methods of analysis. An important advantage of computer simulation is the flexibility available to the designer. Simulation packages such as SYSTID [3] offer the user the capability to study the effects various parameters have on total link performance via bit error rate (BER) estimates, eye diagrams, spectral plots, time plots, etc. In general, computer simulation involves performing a series of transformations on a data structure (i.e., a signal) and analyzing the effects of these transformations using the performance measures mentioned above. The transformations are between and within the time and frequency domains, and model the behavior of cascaded or single components in the system being simulated.

Three important approaches to computer simulation are as follows: a) direct or brute-force Monte Carlo simulation, b) modified Monte Carlo simulation (importance sampling), and c) semi-analytic Monte Carlo simulation. Digital lightwave systems of interest typically operate with bit error probabilities from $10^{-6}$ to $10^{-9}$. For the brute-force Monte Carlo approach to be accurate, a large number of errors must be observed which at these low error rates require on the order of several million simulated bits. Generating and processing this number of bits requires too much computer time to be practical. Importance sampling and semi-analytic approaches reduce the number of bits simulated to a more reasonable value.

Modeling lightwave system functional blocks and using these in a semi-analytic simulation framework are discussed in this paper. Lightwave systems are ideally suited for the semi-analytic approach. The effects of intersymbol interference (ISI) introduced by the optical source and the fiber, in addition to the quantum noise introduced by the photodetector are simulated. Thermal noise (assumed to be white Gaussian) enters the simulation only in the receiver which is downstream of any non-linearities introduced by the optical source or photodetector. Hence the effects of thermal noise are handled analytically. Typically, short PN sequences (on the order of hundreds of bits) can be used to evaluate the effects of the non-Gaussian degradations, which greatly reduce the computer time required as compared to the brute-force approach.

The contents of this paper are divided into
Section II is a brief discussion of the SYSTID simulation package. Section III presents the models for the lightwave functional blocks considered here. Discussed in this section are the single-mode optical fiber models featuring versions which allow tabular input of fiber parameters, and a choice between time domain or frequency domain signal processing. A PIN diode model and two BER estimator models are also discussed.

Section IV presents an example lightwave system simulation which illustrates the capabilities of SYSTID as a tool for lightwave systems analysis. Results from more detailed simulation studies are presented in Section V. The simulated system is a single-mode 140 Mb/s, 1.28 μm LED link with a fiber length of 15 Km. Waveform plots are shown at various points throughout the system, along with a plot of probability of bit error versus received optical power. Concluding remarks are presented in Section V.

II. THE SYSTID SIMULATION PACKAGE

The SYSTID simulation package (developed originally by the Hughes Aircraft Corporation) is a powerful tool for analyzing and designing communication systems [3]. SYSTID features a flexible topology format with an input language which corresponds closely to system level block diagrams. This minimizes the amount of time a user spends translating the block diagram of the system under analysis into the simulation source program. Although the user can easily construct new blocks, the SYSTID Model Library contains many commonly used functional blocks such as sources, detectors, and encoders. Results of simulations are analyzed using the SYSTID postprocessor RIP. RIP is menu-driven with a large number of commands available such as spectral plots, time plots, eye diagrams, histograms, correlation, covariance and others. To decrease the amount of time a user spends answering questions in a given menu, standard default values are provided when possible.

The structure of SYSTID makes it easy for the user to construct and use models which require tabular data input. This feature was used in the single-mode fiber modules to allow laboratory hardware measurements to be used in simulating the fiber, as discussed in Section III.

III. MODELING FUNCTIONAL BLOCKS IN A LIGHTWAVE COMMUNICATIONS LINK

Optical Sources

Depending upon the application, optical sources under consideration for lightwave communication systems are either semiconductor light emitting diodes (LED) or laser diodes [5, 6]. Both types of optical sources tend to degrade the input bit stream, although incoherent LEDs are more well behaved (and therefore easier to model) than semi-coherent laser sources. Lasers, however, are capable of providing higher values of launched optical power and are widely used in long distance single-mode fiber systems. LEDs are finding increasing application with single-mode fibers for the shorter distance distribution plant [7].

The spectrum of the optical source plays an important role in determining the effects of dispersion on a single-mode fiber communication system. When using one of the four single-mode fiber models discussed below, the user can either input an arbitrary source spectral density curve in tabular form, or supply the needed parameters to specify a built-in Gaussian approximation to the source spectrum. If the source spectrum was very narrow, it could be approximated as an impulse and the effects of the single-mode fiber could be handled analytically. This is not a realistic assumption, however, and simulation techniques are required to evaluate the effects of a non-ideal source spectrum on system performance.

Single-Mode Fiber

The baseband transfer function of a single-mode fiber can be modeled by the following equation [8]:

\[ H(f) = \int S(\lambda)L(\lambda)e^{-j\mu T(\lambda)}d\lambda \]  (1)

where

- \( f \) = 2\( \pi \)f
- \( L \) = fiber length
- \( S(\lambda) \) = optical source spectrum vs wavelength
- \( L(\lambda) = 1/(\text{fiber loss}) \) vs wavelength
- \( T(\lambda) \) = fiber group delay vs wavelength

The two major physical characteristics which influence the performance of the single-mode fiber are fiber loss and chromatic dispersion. In eq. (1), \( L(\lambda) \) is the reciprocal of loss (gain) as a function of wavelength. The fiber group delay term, \( T(\lambda) \), is actually the antiderivative of the dispersion characteristic. The degrading effects of chromatic dispersion are related to the spectral purity of the optical source. Real optical sources contain a distribution of energy around the source center wavelength \( \lambda \). An optical source with a broad spectrum of optical energy results in a narrowing of the information bandwidth of the fiber. This can be easily noted from eq. (1) if we approximate \( L(\lambda) \) by a constant, and \( T(\lambda) \) by a linear function of \( \lambda \). How the source spectrum \( S(\lambda) \) and the fiber transfer function \( H(f) \) can be visualized as Fourier transform pairs (except for a scale constant). Hence, a broad \( S(\lambda) \) versus \( \lambda \) corresponds to a narrow \( H(f) \) versus \( f \), and vice versa.

If the optical source spectrum is narrow enough to be approximated by an impulse, the fiber transfer function is given by

\[ H(f) = L(\lambda) e^{-j\mu T(\lambda)} \]  (2)

which results in a delayed and attenuated version of the input signal. Although this case is not interesting in itself, this approach was used to verify the fiber models implemented in SYSTID.

The source spectrum can sometimes be approx-
imates a Gaussian as follows [2, 8],
\[ S(\lambda) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi} \sigma} \exp\left(-\frac{(\lambda - \lambda_0)^2}{2\sigma^2}\right) \] (3)
where
- \( \sigma \) = rms spectral width
- \( \lambda_0 \) = source center wavelength

Chromatic dispersion for silica fibers is sometimes approximated by [2, 8],
\[ \frac{dT(\lambda)}{d\lambda} = \frac{s}{c} \left(\frac{\lambda - \lambda_0}{\lambda^2}\right) \] (4)
where
- \( s \) = a unitless constant
- \( c \) = speed of light
- \( \lambda_0 \) = zero-dispersion wavelength

The group delay is then
\[ T(\lambda) = \frac{s}{c} \left(\ln\frac{\lambda_0}{\lambda} + \frac{\lambda_0 - \lambda}{\lambda^2}\right) \] (5)

These closed-form approximations to the source spectrum and chromatic dispersion are not adequate when it is desired to simulate a single-mode fiber and optical source which have characteristics that deviate drastically from those in eqs. (3) and (5). In addition, no reasonable closed-form expression exists for fiber loss. Hence, some means for arbitrary entry of the various functions is required for a single-mode fiber model to be general enough to handle arbitrary dispersion, loss and source spectrum characteristics.

Four different models of the single-mode fiber have been implemented in SYSTID. All four models use eq. (1) to calculate the fiber transfer function. Two of the models use frequency domain signal processing methods, while the other two perform signal processing in the time domain via the convolution sum. One of the frequency and one of the time domain models use the closed form approximations to the source spectrum and chromatic dispersion curves given in eqs. (3) and (4) respectively. The other set of models allows the user to input either the source spectrum or dispersion, (or both) as tabular functions. The advantage of using the "closed-form" models is that they are easier to use and require less computer time to calculate the transfer function. All models require fiber loss data to be input in tabular form.

The integral in eq. (1) is implemented using Simpson's rule. Euler's identity is used to break the integrand into real and imaginary parts yielding
\[ H(f) = \frac{\sin(\omega L(f))}{\omega L(f)} = \frac{-j}{\omega L(f)} \int S(\lambda)L(\lambda)\sin(\omega L(\lambda))d\lambda \] (6)

To save computer time when calculating \( H(f) \), the values of \( S(\lambda)L(\lambda) \) and \( 2\pi sL(T(\lambda)) \) are calculated during the first integration (i.e., the first value of baseband frequency, \( f \)) and stored in arrays for future integrations. The upper and lower limits of integration are parameters to the model, and are chosen to include the significant non-zero values of \( S(\lambda) \). One additional constraint on the function \( S(\lambda) \) is that \( |S(\lambda)|d\lambda = 1 \), otherwise the attenuation of the fiber will be incorrectly biased.

It is important to use sufficient resolution in the discrete integration to provide an accurate approximation to the continuous integration. It was found that if the resolution of the integrations in eq. (6) was inadequate, the fiber transfer function at higher frequencies would be incorrect. It was determined that double precision arithmetic is required to eliminate roundoff errors which occur under some circumstances. Double precision is only required when calculating the fiber transfer function and not when performing the signal processing, so the speed penalty for using double precision arithmetic is not proportional to the number of samples processed by the simulation.

To help reduce the amount of computer time required during execution of a lightweight simulation, all four fiber models can be configured to either write the calculated transfer function to a save file, or to read from this save file. This feature is useful when it is desirable to hold the single-mode fiber parameters constant and study the effects of varying parameters of other models in the simulation.

The group delay function, \( T(\lambda) \), is obtained as follows. The antiderivative of the user-input tabular dispersion data is automatically calculated yielding group delay plus an arbitrary constant versus wavelength. Next, the arbitrary constant of integration is evaluated by biasing the group delay function to force it to pass through a user-specified point. There is no restriction on what type of function the user specifies for dispersion, loss, or source spectral density, as long as adequate resolution is used.

The calculated transfer function of the single-mode fiber is used directly in the two models which perform the signal processing in the frequency domain. The FFT of the fiber input signal is multiplied by the transfer function and the inverse FFT of the result is calculated. To preserve a modular program structure, these frequency domain signal processing operations are performed by a SYSTID library model. Use of frequency domain signal processing requires the input signal to be periodic, and introduces an artificial delay equal to the size of the FFT. This approach offers the advantage of very fast execution time when compared to the time domain convolution approach.

The two models which use time domain signal processing implement the discrete convolution sum using a tapped delay line algorithm. In these models the calculated transfer function is inverse transformed to obtain the sampled impulse response of the single-mode fiber. Each sample of the impulse response is a tap gain in the
introducing quantum which variance) comes more important. In practical PIN receivers the effects of quantum or shot noise are overshadowed by the thermal noise of succeeding receiver stages. In this analysis, however, quantum noise has been added because of the need to eventually model an APD receiver, where the photodetector noise becomes more important.

The number of charge carriers (electron-hole pairs) in a PIN diode can be modeled mathematically as a Poisson process, with a mean (and variance) proportional to the incident optical power \( P_{\text{inc}}(t) \Delta t \). The average number of charge carriers \( N \) generated in a time \( \Delta t \) is given by

\[
N = \frac{n}{hv} P_{\text{inc}}(t) \Delta t + n_d \Delta t
\]

where

- \( P_{\text{inc}}(t) \) = incident optical power
- \( n \) = quantum efficiency
- \( h \) = Plank's constant
- \( v \) = optical frequency
- \( n_d \) = number of dark charge carriers/second

The probability that exactly \( k \) electron-hole pairs are generated in a time \( \Delta t \) can be written as

\[
P(n = k) = \frac{(N)^k e^{-N}}{k!}
\]

which is simply the Poisson probability mass function. The PIN diode output current is proportional to the number of carriers, and is given by

\[
i(t) = \frac{e n}{\Delta t}
\]

where

- \( e \) = the charge of an electron
- \( n \) = the number of carriers generated in \( \Delta t \) seconds

Implementation of the mathematical model of the PIN detector shot noise in SYSTID is relatively straightforward. The majority of the programming effort was involved in generating the Poisson random numbers, and providing the parameters necessary to allow the user some flexibility in controlling the trade-off between simulation run-time and accuracy.

Several methods for generating the Poisson random numbers are available, but the model we implemented utilizes the fact that in a Poisson process the interarrival time between events is exponentially distributed. The mean of the interarrival time random variable is equal to the reciprocal of the mean of the Poisson process (for an observation time interval equal to unity). For each sample in the simulation, the PIN diode model produces the Poisson distributed random number using the above relationship. If the average number of carriers, \( N \), given in eq. \( (8) \) is large, then a Gaussian random number is generated with mean and variance equal to \( N \). This is an extremely good approximation for \( N \) larger than 50, and requires much less computer time.

**Bit Error Estimator Models**

There are currently two bit error rate (BER) estimation models implemented in SYSTID which are designed for lightwave communication system simulation. Both employ the semi-analytic approach to reduce the amount of simulation time required to obtain accurate estimates of link BER. The primary difference between the two is that one assumes thermal noise (additive white Gaussian) is added at a single point in the receiver, while the other model assumes two different thermal noise sources.

It was necessary to modify a BER estimator model which already existed in SYSTID library so that it could be used with the on-off keying modulation scheme used in lightwave systems. These models automatically calculate the noise equivalent bandwidth of the portion of the system which lies downstream of the point where thermal noise enters the system. This is accomplished by injecting an impulse into this portion of the system (which is assumed linear) and summing the magnitude squared of the impulse response. The signal power at the point where noise enters the system is also measured and input to the BER estimator model.

The BER estimator models measure the distance from the received sample to the threshold, and calculate the probability of error for the values of signal power to noise power ratio requested by the user. This calculation is repeated for the corresponding sample in each bit, and the results averaged. For example, if there are 16 samples per bit then there are 16 different average error probabilities calculated. If sampling was assumed to occur at the optimum instant during each bit interval, the overall BER would be the minimum of the 16 (for example) different BER estimates. Because it is not always reasonable to assume that the receiver timing recovery is accurate enough to provide optimum sampling, the BER models discussed here provide the user with tables of the probability of error estimate for each of the samples in the bit interval, making it easier to evaluate the effects of timing errors on system performance.

**IV. LIGHTWAVE SYSTEM SIMULATION EXAMPLE**

To help demonstrate the capabilities of computer simulation of lightwave communication systems, a simple SYSTID simulation example is
presented which employs the lightwave models previously discussed (LED source, single-mode fiber, PIN photodiode, BER estimator). The example is not intended to show any new advances in lightwave system technology. The purpose of the example is to demonstrate the potential usefulness of simulation in analyzing lightwave systems.

Figure 1 shows a digital lightwave communications system block diagram with RNPS postprocessor plots of the signals at various points. Figure 1, the actual thermal noise samples are generated and shown for illustration. In the actual semi-analytic simulation, the effects of thermal noise are determined analytically - no thermal noise samples are generated, and the sample and decide block is replaced with a BER estimator model.

The information source is modeled using an NRZ PN sequence generator, which in these examples produces 128 bit PN sequences with 16 samples per bit. The bit rate is 140 Mb/s. The PN generator selected for this example allows the user to specify the rise and fall times independently, and is therefore useful for modeling the fact that most optical sources have turn-on and turn-off characteristics which are not equal. The Gaussian approximation to the optical source spectral density curve is used in the example. The source operates with a center wavelength of 1.28 micrometers and an RMS spectral width of 30 nanometers.

The single-mode fiber in the example simulation uses the dispersion curve given in eq. (5), with a zero-dispersion wavelength equal to 1.31 micrometers. A tabular fiber loss function was used with a fiber loss of approximately 0.5 dB/Km at 1.31 micrometers. The single-mode fiber model also includes optical source power level scaling, which in this example corresponds to a launched optical power of -28 dBm. Four thousand subintervals were used in the discrete implementation of the integral in eq. (1) to evaluate the fiber transfer function. The resulting transfer function was calculated over the entire simulation bandwidth (-1120 to +1120 MHz) and contained 2240 frequency samples.

The remainder of the functional blocks in the example simulation model the various mechanisms of a lightwave receiver. The number of dark charge carriers generated by the PIN diode photodetector was set equal to $1.34 \times 10^{11}$ carriers/second (21 nanoamperes). The PIN diode photodetector represents the only non-linearity in the lightwave communications link.

Thermal noise enters the receiver in the circuitry following the PIN diode as shown in
When using the semi-analytic simulation approach in SYSTID, the ENBSIG model is inserted into the simulation at the point where the Gaussian noise enters the system. For the BER estimates to be correct, the portion of the system from the ENBSIG model to the end of the signal path must be linear. This turns out to be a very realistic assumption—this section of actual lightwave receivers is always linear. For purposes of illustration, the third order, 100 MHz Butterworth filter is used to simulate the equalization filter in a lightwave system receiver. However, a variety of SYSTID library models are available to simulate the equalization filter.

To keep the example simple, a single thermal noise source was used. Inputs to the BER estimator model include the receiver filter output signal, the input bitstream, the decision threshold value, and the thermal noise power spectral density. For each value of received optical power, the BER estimator model produces a table which lists probability of error versus S/N for each of the 16 samples in a simulation bit. The table includes probability of error estimates for each sample in the bit interval so that the effects of non-optimum sampling due to timing errors can be evaluated.

A plot of probability of bit error versus received optical power is given for this example simulation in Figure 2. The plot in Figure 2 assumes ideal sampling.

**Figure 2.** Probability of bit error versus received average optical power for the SYSTID example.

### V. CONCLUSIONS

Techniques for modeling lightwave system functional blocks in SYSTID have been presented, along with examples of their usage in an end-to-end lightwave system simulation. Flexible-topology simulation packages such as SYSTID can be used to analyze different types of communications links (i.e., satellite and lightwave). Future trends in simulation package design are leading toward combining this flexibility with more user-friendly graphics editing capabilities.

### REFERENCES


